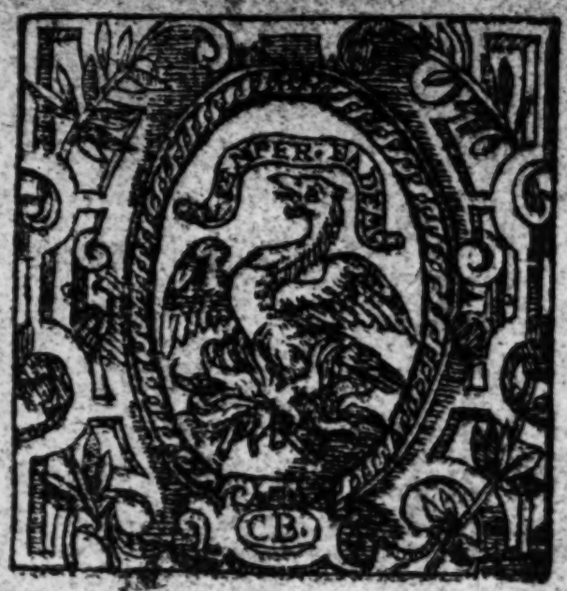
GERILEON OF ENGLAND.

The second Part

Of his most excellent, delectable, *morall, and sweet contriued Historie:* continuing his meruailous deeds of Armes, haughtie prowesse, and honourable loue: with sundrie other verie memorable Aduentures.

Written in French by *Estienne de Maisonneufue, Bordelois:* and translated into English, by *A. M*, one of the Messengers of her Maiesties Chamber.

Patere: aut abstine.



Imprinted at London for Cuthbert Burbie, and are to be sold at the middle Shop in the Poultrie. 1592.

To the right Worshipfull, Maister *Ralphe Marshall*, of *Carleton*, in the Countie of *Nottingham*, Esquier: & to the vertuous and most affable Gentlewoman, Mistres *Fraunces Marshall* his wife: *A. M.* commendeth the kinde acceptance of his translated *Gerileon*.

IT is not vnknowen to your Worship, (gentle Maister *Marshall*, howe since my first entring on this Historie, to translate it: I haue been diuers and sundrie times countermanded by her Maiesties appointment, in the place where I serue, to post from place to place on such affaires as were enioyned mee, so that not hauing fully finished one sheete, and the Printer beginning almost so soone as my selfe; I haue been greatly his hinderaunce, and com-

pelled to catch hold on such little leasures, as in the morning ere I went to horse-backe, or in the euening comming into mine Inne, I could compasse from companie. That I fable not herein, you are my witnesse; in that at your owne house I wrote a sheete or two, and elsewhere in your companie, as occasion serued: and sithence in a long lingring iourney, I haue knit vp the rest, sending leafe by leafe vnperused to the Printer, which must needes yeelde doubt of a perfect Translation. In this hard case, I hope your Worship will the more fauor mee, being perswaded it should haue been better, if more respite had been graunted me. Yet this dare I saye beside, that except it bee a word here and there by mee left out, or by the Printer mistaken, I am assured verie little lacketh, I am certaine not so much as a line of the Historie: for in verie trueth, I followed the French (welneere) word for word. But howsoeuer imperfect or vnpollished it bee, your kinde Acceptation will make it passe for currant: whereof, as I make no doubt, so am I the better encouraged in the successe of my fortune.

tune. You are a Scholler your ſelfe, and know both how to gratifie Schollers labors, as alſo in affabilitie of ſpirite to ſhew them good countenaunce. I am not vnmindfull of the good Gentlewoman your Wife, and although thys worke were once elſe-where determined: yet now, both my promiſe to you and her (at our laſt beeing together) is perfourmed: wiſhing that *Gerileon* may prooue as delightfull to you both in the reading, as it hath been painfull & laborious to me in the Tranſlating.

Your VVorſhips to vſe.

A. Mundy.

To his good friend Ma: A.M.

BSence, among approoued frends disseuers not affect, neither can the change of aire chaunge resolued minds. In absence your kindnes toward me hath been approued, which I haue studied to requite, but can no way equall: neuertheles abilitie shall not hinder endeuour; but I will doo what I may, whereby shall bee manifest what I would. But least I seeme to call my credite in question with you by too long circumstance (of which I assure my selfe you make no doubt) I will leaue protestations, & go forward with my purpose. Sir, so it is, that in your late employment about her Maiesties affaires, hauing left the Translation of *Gerileon* vnfinished, I chaunst to heare of a newe part fully ended, by an excellent Scholler (I assure ye) as euer attained to the vnderstanding of *As in præsenti*. His ripe wit, rare learning, and excellent Science, hath plentifully appeared, in sundrie inuented bookes of newes; wherein how euer he hath audaciously abused sundrie well deseruing personages, by attributing to them victories, when they at that time came not neere the enemie; yet hath hee been liberally rewarded (after six pence a sheete) of the Book-binder hys Arch-workmaister. For this sea-swolne Sycophant, can no sooner heare the thunder cracke, but he interpretes it to bee the roaring of Cannons, the confusion of enemies, a conquest to the English. Then ouer his Kan of *Canarie* wine: nay, soft and faire, his labour gets no such allowance; for truly, truly, and in good sooth, ye see this world is hard, & better drink than Barley yeelds, cannot be spar'd. Yea, say ye so; well, sith we are all English-men, let it bee so: and ouer hys Ale-pot let him ruminate. Now, in such a month at *Lisbone*,

fire

fire consumed so manie *Hambrough* ships of Corne; witnessed by them that in three yere before, neuer left the Realme of *England*: then a valiant *Suffolke* Gentleman, (as indeede he is) at such a fight tooke such a prize; at another, one so rich, as it is almost incredible to report: when God knowes the worthy Gentleman came home, and hardly had saued his owne. Sundrie of these could I set downe, beside that paltry rude ryme, wherein an honourable personage of this Realme was so palpably abusde. But what cares hee? not a Barley corne: for he calls himselfe a Canonier, and in the discharge of pot-shot, cares not at whom he leuell, so he fasten on the white, that by diminutiue degrees is drawen from the strings of his Stationers purse. But I remember ye tolde mee once, his newes-buyer is no Stationer, yet I am sure he is a Ballad-seller, and hath a whole Armie of runnagates at his reuersion, that swarme euerie where in *England*, and with theyr ribauld songs infect the Youth of this flourishing Commonweale. I maruell who the diuell is his Printer: and but that I am assured, it cannot bee done but by some mans helpe of that profession, I should hardly be perswaded, that anie professor of so excellent a Science would bee so impudent, to print such odious and lasciuious ribauldrie, as *Watkins Ale*, *The Carmans Whistle*, and sundrie such other. But it may be, there is some wainscot fac'd fellowe, that is abel to print no good thing, found out to be his instrument: if it be so, it were not greatly amisse, might my censure serue for a determinate sentence, that he might dance at a Cartes tayle the Car-mans whistle, till his backe were as well seasoned as his face. But this belongs to higher powers: returne wee to our first man. Who, how euer his credite may bee impayred by the publishing of vntrue newes, it hath not been a little recouered by the exquisite Translation of Fortunes Defier *Andrugio*. For this is to be prooued, he so followed his Author, that not the best Scholler in the worlde can reprooue him of digression. Indeed (as I take it) it was first written in broken English, &

so

so I am sure it is printed: for if he had not in some measure the English tongue, he would be vtterly mute. But here may a question be mooued, if this that I affirme bee true; where shall we haue *Gerileon* by him Englished, sith he vnderstands not French? Why easely, Is it not a Fiction first deuised in French? Yes. So shall it be in English. Why tell mee, art thou so impudent to abuse the worke of so noble a Gentleman, as the French Author was; wherein such excelent pollicie, such morrall prudence, such singular conceipted passions are included? Go too, let me not take thee publishing a counterfet part thereof in print: if I doo, I will hang Saint *Peters* Church Corner with such Scutchions of thy shame, that *Mannering* musing what it should meane, shall neuer cease bestirring him with his tip-staffe, till at Leaden Hall all the Ballad-singers be gathered into one Assembly; and there in rime doggrell (like thy Winter bitten Epitaph) carroll thy rude conceipts. But whether runne I? Let this bee [illegible] for a warning, and so wil I leaue him to the mercie of his mother wit. Beseeching you to proceede, as you haue begun in that delectable Hystorie, which as it is much desired for the delightfulnes therof; so shal you be no lesse commended for your diligence therein,

Your friend, T. N.

Not Thomas Nash,
But Henry Chettle.

THE SECOND BOOKE OF THE PLEASant Historie, of Gerileon of England.

Cap. I.

How the Infant *Porphiria*, daughter to the Emperour of Constantinople, being very sick for the loue of the Fairie youth that was sent by *Ozyris*: is brought (by the meanes of *Sagibell* her Phisition, in the companie of *Marcella* and *Hardetine* her cousin,) to a Castell neere Constantinople, for change of ayre. Where the wise *Sagibell* promised to let her see by art Magique, in what estate her friend was the Knight of the Fayries, with his originall and aduentures.

THe Princesse Porphiria hauing taken no rest, since the day and houre when falsis the maide Dynamia, sister to Pharisor, and Amidrea who deerely loued him, notwithstanding shee receiuing no loue againe, came to informe her, how the Fayrie youth on whom she had fastened such earnest affection, as it was not possible for any King or Prince like him selfe, to be beloued of any Princesse, as he was of the Infant Porphiria: was slaine, with Pharisor, who had won like conquest of the Virgin Amidrea, and that the murderer was gone to make his vaunt in the Emperour her fathers Court, of such a monstrous and vnhappie deed, clad in his Armour, and mounted on the good Knights horse that had vanquished the Giants, as is declared in the xvi. Chap-

ter of the first Booke of this historie. After she had by insupportable greefe, swounded many times, she fell into an extreame burning feauer: as what with the violence therof, and her balefull passions of loue together, she had at this instant dyed, but that she was continually comforted by the Ladyes Harderina and Marcella, after that the Giant Ergoferant, who followed in quest of the vnknowne Knight, and hauing found him, brought him to the Emperours Court, where in eight dayes his wounds were healed. By meanes whereof, these Ladyes (who knew well the cause of the Infants disease) perswaded her so much as they could: with this hope grounded in them, that the death of the Knight and Fairie youth, was no more certaine or to be credited, then the report of Pharisor: And that the vnknowne Knight who rumoured foorth these tidings, had doone it but for the aduantage of his glorie, or to couer the dishonour he receiued in the Iouſt: which made her somewhat to recomfort her selfe, so that (but for her feauer) she might easily haue recouered her former state of health.

But if she suffered such anguish for her friend, the Fairie youth endured no whit lesse for her, in that his loue toke life at that instant, when she did him the honour to girde on his sword with her dellicate hands: but he fearing that their loues were not reciprocall, languished in selfe same fits as the Infant did, esteeming him selfe so vnfortunate and slenderlie fauoured by loue: that he thought their wounds to proceed from shafts of contrarie nature, whereby the cure of either would proue as different. Thus did the fire search through the bone to the marrowe, and he was so distracted in himselfe (as hath beene touchet in the former Booke) as wandering from the care hee had to seeke the vnknowne Knight, to reueuge the death of his good friend Pharisor: he now hath lost himselfe, in thinking and contemplating on that heauenly beautie, which lay neerest his hart, and aboue all things else he most prefered. So that in steed of taking

the

the right way, for embarking himself to some strange countrey: hee returned with his Squire Geliaste towards the Cittie of Constantinople, imagining (neuertheleſſe) that he rode farre enough from it. On the other ſide, the Princeſſe Porphiria was euen at deaths doore, for the loue of her knight, and ſo farre extended each extremitie, as notwithſtanding all ſoueraigne remedies appplyed, from one houre to another, a daungerous end was ſtill expected.

The Emperour and Empreſſe were wonderfull greeued at their daughters ſicknes, not knowing whence the occaſion thereof procéded: and therefore wholy committed her to the care of Sagibell her Phiſition, a man moſt expert and ſkilfull in the art of medicine. This Phiſition was likewiſe greatly experimented in the art Magique, and the Princeſſe of long time diſcerned in him very ſpeciall affection and fidelitie towards her: wherefore among diuers contrarie opinions, which day and night combatted in her labouring thoughts, ſhe imagined how to finde ſome eaſe for her afflictions, and ſent for him by the Lady Marcella, who knewe much better then the phiſition where the diſeaſe pained her, ſhe beeing then to Harderina participating theſe ſecrets. Right prompt and readie was ſhee to obey the Princeſſe will, and ſuddenly went to finde this wiſe man, who was altogether confounded with greefe and penſiuenes, becauſe he could not attaine the meane, whereby the faire Princes might recouer footing againe: for to her ſeruice he was intirelie affected, conſidering that all his happines depended on her ſafetie and health, and ſhee recured it would enrich him for euer: for the Emperour had promiſed him, that if by his ſkill he could reſtore his daughter, he would returne him ſuch a recompence, as ſhould both exalt and content him for ever. But without any ſuch promiſe Sagibell was carefull enough of the Infants health, and failed not in his very vttermoſt endeuours: and Porphiria (for her part) was willing to beſtowe on this ſkilfull man, what euer ſhe might

enioy by the Emperour and Empres, prouided, that her amorous sicknes might finde desired recouerie. Wherepon, Marcella hauing tould him the Princes would speake with him, and that with speed he should repaire to her chamber: without further questioning with the Lady, he went thither immediatly, not a little ioyfull of this message, which he hoped might presage some good to ensue, because hauing so lately left her, he was now so suddenly sent for. When Sagibell was come to her, he demanded how she felt her selfe: When the Princesse (breathing forth a deepe fetcht sighe from the bottome of her hart) thus spake vnto him. Ah Sagibell, impossible is it I should be well, considering the estate wherein I am, all your medicines and drugges hauing no abilitie to giue me my former strength, health and quietnes; yet notwithstanding, your knowledge might doe me great good seruice, if you were so pleased. Sagibell was not a little abashed at the woordes of the Princesse, and knew not what to coniecture of them, because they implyed such a contradiction: for she said all his medicines and drugs could not helpe her, and yet she might be highly benefited by his knowledge, which made him to returne this answere. Why Madame, doe you thinke I haue made spare of my knowledge, and that I haue not endeuoured my vttermost (according to Art) to set ye on your feet againe? Thereof I am perswaded my good friend Sagibell, quoth she, but your art of medicine is not auailable for me in this case: for were your God Appollo, Aesculapius, Hipocrates and Galen heere present to giue me remedie, yet could they vnderstand no more of my disease then you doo. But will yee promise to be faithfull and secret to me, as I did neuer yet finde yee otherwise: and I shall acquaint yee with the cause and originall of my greefe, which when ye haue vnderstood, easily by your knowledge may the effect be taken away. The Phisition who was quick conceited, began to ware iealous of the cause, gathering by hir woordes, that loue had made a

great

great breach into her tender hart: yet making shewe as though he suspected no such matter, he sayd to the Princesse. Beléeue (good Madame) that I will be secret to yée, and continue such fidelitie towards yée, as the Emperour your father and your selfe haue alwayes found in me. The Princesse being in bed, caused her pillowes to be rayled, to the end shee might deliner her minde with the more ease: and hauing heard the answer of her Phisition, with voice faint and weake, entermedled with a thousand sighes, shee thus began.

My sicknes is caused by the loue I beare to the fairie youth, if he liue not, then thinke a speedie end will deliuer me from this anguish: except you take pittie on mee, and succour me in other sort then as yet you haue done, I know you are skilfull in the Magique science, and that by Art you can let me sée him aliue or dead: he is the man, whose onely remembrance giues life and content to my amorous passions. Then let me sée in what estate he is, for nothing else can ease my afflictions, and all remedies else are vtterlie in vaine, as by the applying and proofe you haue hitherto beheld. I had not knowne aboue fourtéene or fiftéene yeeres, when first his loue made seyzure on my hart, euen amongst the Ladyes of the Empresse my mother, where I was constrained to swoune in the publique assemblie: he then that hath occasioned this hurt to me, can take it away and giue me helpe, but it consists in you to giue me some ease by your knowledge, in shewing me my friend aliue, wherein I desire to be resolued, because I stand in doubt he is dead. If I be assured of his end, then mine hath no long date of continuance, so shall I bee freed from these extreame passions, which not alone wounds my hart, but deuides in sunder my very soule: leauing me so disconsolate, as but I was comforted by one of my Ladyes, long since had I past out of this miserable life into a better.

Sagibell hauing attentiuely heard the Princesse, thus

answered. Madame you haue well seene my faithfull seruice towards yee till this present, and be ye assured, that though it valued the price of my life, yet will I hazard all for the safetie of yours: for so must I confesse my selfe bound to do in dutie, in regard yee haue discouered to me such a secret, as neuer could be gathered by the rules of phisick, beside, the many honors doone me, in being toward the Emperour and you, commaunds me to do my vttermost for your good. Most gladly then doo I yeeld to satisfie your request, but perhaps it cannot be so soone as you would, because heere I may not make proofe of any such practise by arte, for feare of being discouered: it behooues vs then to finde out, a place more proper and conuenient, and it were not much amisse, the better to couller our enterprise, that the Emperour were giuen to vnderstand, that it is needefull for your health to change this ayre, otherwise your life will be in great hazard. As for the place, both faire, delightfull, and agreeing with your intent, choose the Castell of pleasure which the Emperour hath hard at hand: and there may yee commodiously without any suspition, haue knowledge of him you loue so deerely, and vnderstand likewise of whence he is.

The Princesse intreated him very earnestly that it might be so, and forthwith to moue the matter to the Emperour: which he hauing effected, she would requite it with such liberalitie, as hee should haue cause to extoll his good fortune. The phisition hauing in this sort comforted her, and giuen her hope of knowing what most she desired: toke his leaue, promising very quickly to returne againe, to tell her how he sped with the Emperour. Before whom when he was come, both he and the Empresse demanded of the phisition, the estate of Porphiria their daughter: when Sagibell answered, that he thought it meete she should change the ayre, to see if that in any sort would amend her, for hee was of opinion, that the alteration of the ayre would do hir great good, and bring her to her former health and strength,

next

next to the grace of God. And whither were it best (quoth the Emperour) she should be remooued? To some fayre and pleasant place, replied Sagibell, that her body finding ease by change of ayre, her eye might likewise bee delighted with pleasing obiects. It were good then (said the Emperour) to conuay her to my Castell nére at hand, which is seated meruailous fitly for such a purpose. There cannot be (quoth Sagibell) a place more conuenable, but it were not expedient that any traine should accompanie her, for disquieting her head with goers and commers to speake with her: and I doubt not, but (by Gods helpe) you shall shortly see her as well and merrie as euer she was, albeit now she is more likely to die then liue. God prosper your attempt then (said the Emperour) and turning toward the Empresse, thus he proceeded. Do you (Madame) cause all her equipage to be prouided, and appoint such Ladyes for her companie as you shall thinke méete. In this time of their conference, Sagibell departed, and aduertised the princesse how he had sped, shewing likewise what resolution was set downe, to transport her to the place himselfe before had named. Whereof the princesse not a little ioyfull, though weake, yet hoping to receiue some comfort: intreated the phisition to hasten this iourney.

Sagibell was scant departed the princesse chamber, but the Empresse entred, hauing her eyes full of teares, and her hart cloyde with greefe, accompanyed with hir Ladyes and Gentlewomen, saying to hir daughter: that for recouerie of her health, it was thought expedient shee should change the ayre, and (if she were so pleased) she should be conducted to the Emperours Castell of pleasure, which was not farre without the Cittie of Constantinople. She answered with a spent and wearyed voyce, that she submitted her selfe to their good pleasures, and desired she might haue to kéepe hir companie, her Cousin Harderina and the Lady Marcella. You shall haue them (quoth the Empresse) with all things else

shall

shall stand with your liking: in meane while then bee of good cheere, that wee may see yée well againe, so soone as possible may be, if ye regard the ioy of the Emperour and mee.

Hauing spoken these words, the teares fell from her eyes in such aboundance, greeuing to sée the faire princesse of the world in this weake estate: as being ouercome with sorrow, she was constrained to depart the chamber, not saying any thing, but that shee should rest her selfe awhile, and shee would go giue order for her departure. Which accordingly she did, and after all things were in a readinesse, the day being still, calme and cléere, Sagibell aduised the Emperour and Empresse, that now the time serued most fitly, for conuaying the princesse to the place appointed: without making any longer stay, least any contrarie accident should happen, as might crosse their determination so sound and profitable. Wherefore the Empresse, with consent of the princesse Porphiria, (who was pale, wan, and consumed with greefe, as nothing was expected more then her buriall, so woonderfully was she weakened and changed, hauing lost hir vermillion blush, the life and essence of her diuine beautie, which made her loued and honoured of the most fayre and valiant Knight of the world, to wit, the man so farre renowmed by Ozyris:) caused a Litter to be brought, couered with greene veluet, and lined all through within with the same, the nayles and fringes of beaten gold, and the arches ouer head richly embolished: wherein was layd the languishing and amourous princesse, who séemed therein as a bright shining Sunne, such as chased Diana amongst the troupe of hir fayre Nimphes, and therein was placed with hir Harderina, to entertaine the time of iourney with comfortable speeches. Each one may imagine (without any setting downe in writing) the wofull sighes and teares of the father and mother, and the generall lamentations on euery side at this departure, for they had neither heard or séene

any

any cause of reioysing in long time before.

In this sort, and very well accompanied, especially with her phisition, she was conducted to a very faire and pleasant Castell, which the Emperour had caused to bee built fiue or sixe miles from the Cittie of Constantinople, wherein (because it was seated and builded so meruailous strongly) the Emperours treasure, riches, and most precious iewels were kept. This Castell was erected very stately to beholde, for the walles wherewith it was enuironed, was of stone, so white as fine Iuorie: the inclosures and base courts were on the one side guarded with the maine Sea, and on the other with ditches so large and deepe, as the space contained three quarters of a mile, rather more then lesse, so saith the Historian, that saw the measure thereof taken by a Geomatrician of that time when it was made. It was bodyed with many beautifull loodgings, in goodly faire Tolwers and Turrets, euery chamber being in most sweete and wholsome ayre, and backt with sundrie galleries of all sorts and fashions, the couerings whereof were of lead, wrought and cut into many curious deuises of workmanship, hauing standing aloft thereon, fayre vaynes and weather cocks of golde and siluer. The Gardens and Arbours were hemd in with swift running riuers and cleere fountaines, and to say all in breefe, there wanted not any thing that could be imagined, both to strengthen the place, as also becoming such a daintie compassed Castell. Heereinto was brought (by the councell of her phisition) the most faire princesse of the world, for more assured commoditie of knowing and seeing what she most desired, according to the promise of the wise Magitian: in whom she reposed very great hope and trust, and there happened to her what yee shall read hereafter, for now we must borrow a little leaue to speake of other matters.

Chap. 2.

Of the Sophie of Persiaes loue to the beautifull *Porphiria*, and how he forsooke and left his kingdome, to goe see if her exquisite perfections answered the report of her renowme. And how on the way he met two Pilgrimes of diuers sorte, the one whereof recounted to him the prowesse, beautie, and high chiualrie of the Fairie youth, during which time they heard a great noise in a Forrest, which caused them goe thither. Wherein one may note, how amorous passions do so maister the hearts of the greatest personages, as leading them from the pathes of reason: they forsake what is their dutie, and all important affaires whatsoeuer, cannot withdraw them from seruing their affections. And by the Pilgrimes discourse, wee may see how commendable true and sincere freendship is, and that a good turne ought to bee greatlie esteemed, and bindes him in no small bond that hath receiued it, especially the heart addicted to noblenesse and vertue.

Haue heretofore declared, as yee may read in the fourteenth and sixteenth chapters of the former Booke, that the great and puissant king of Persia, was wonderfully surprised with the loue of this faire princesse, whom because we so lately left, yee cannot easilie forget: and that by all meanes possible he could deuise, he sought how he might attaine her to be his wife. So that imagining the contrarietie of his religion, might yeld some reason of hinderance, he caused himselfe to be baptized, to the end all his people might become Christians, he sent for diuers diuines into Christendome, that they should come preach, and do all the other seruices of good and faithfull Christians in his king-

kingdome. Notwithstanding this which he did was but counterfeit and dissimulation, that so (vnder this pretext) he might the more easilie induce the good Emperour of Constantinople father to the maide, without difficultie to grant his mariage. And to this end sent he messengers and ambassadours expressedlie to him, to vnderstand his pleasure, attending which time, transported with impatience of so long delay: one day he determined secretlie to depart himselfe, that he might behold this so famous beautie, by whose picture (drawne to the life by some excellent painter of that time,) he had drunke this sweete sirrop of conceiued loue. And as he had suddenlie thus determined, as suddenlie did he put it in execution, not hauing any companie with him but a Squire of his owne, whose fidelitie he neuer called in question: to him he gaue his Helmet and Launce to beare, his Helmet (I say) which was beyond all other in temper and goodnes, hauing on the Creast thereof a bright shining Carbuncle, made in resemblance of the Sunne, which an hundred paces euery way about him, gaue in the night time such an exceeding cleerenes and light, as dooth the Moone when she is in hir fullest perfection. He sometimes wun it from a great and puissant king of Assiria, whome he had conquered in combate, that for the prize of victorie, had set his kingdome against a part of Persia: but after the conquest, he released him, and in recompence of such wonderfull courtesie, the Assirian gaue him this Helmet, which he esteemed more then all his good. Hereupon the Sophie did vsualie weare it, when he went in any notable or signall expedition, and especiallie when he had any occasion to trauaile by night about any affaires of importance, as this which now he had vndertaken: leauing his kingdome in weake and poore estate, through diuersitie of religions which there he suffered. And this oftentimes is cause of the intire ruine and desolation, of the very greatest Monarchies and common-wealths, yet left he the rule to one of his brotheren, a

young man, voyd of experience in such high affayres. And albeit hee was apt to armes, and a good knight in triall of his person: yet had hee not sence and vnderstanding, to gouerne the helme of so huge a vessell, as was the monarchie of Persia. Thus was the Sophie not assured of his sufficiencie, and but that his head was troubled with amorous conceits, he would not haue reposed any such trust in him: but let it be, he did it by indiscretion, or else for more assurance of his secret departure, not thinking his voyage would be so long as afterward it prooued, suffice it he did not wisely, as you shall perceiue by the discourse following in the historie.

Hauing committed this poore kinde of order to his very greatest affaires, he departed in equipage as ye haue heard, riding many dayes and nights together, vnder cleerenes of his meruailous shining helmet, without finding any aduenture worthy the writing, and passed thorow diuers Citties of his owne kingdom, vnknowne of any one, and made such quick expedition, as he came to the vtmost merge of Persia: where finding a Barque readie to depart, in few dayes hee landed in the desert of Arabia, and from thence by great trauayle, not without enduring sundrie hazards and perrils on the way, he reached the countrey of Palestine, still carryed on with the inward remembrance of his loue, as he little regarded whether he rode right or wrong. Being thus arriued in this countrey, he entred into a Forrest thick beset with trees, which contained many miles both in length and breadth, wherein he had not ridden any long while, but he met two pilgrimes conferring together: the one of them being young of age, and endued with very singuler beautie, for his haire was yellow like wyers of gold, and the prettie downe on his chaekes and chin was of the same couler, in his face likewise stood the liuely couler of the Rose: his stature was neither great nor smal, but indifferent euery way: his broad hat was garnished with Scallop shels round about, and Medialles of gold and siluer, intermingled with

little

little pilgrime stones of Iuorie very artificially framed: his Cassock and hose was of fine linnen cloth, and at his girdle hung a little bottle, wherein hee had both wine and water, according as he had occasion to vse them, and in his hand a staffe piked at both the ends. The other pilgrime was an old man, the haire of whose head and beard was of reddish couller, grizeled among with many white haires, his visage drie and withered, and tand with blacknesse almost like a Moore, flat nosed, the toth standing in his head very ugly to beheld, of very euill fauour was he and disposition: his stature was grosse and short, big bulkt before downe to the girdle, and on his back a rising mountaine: his garments were of old besmered lether, all ragged and torne, and his hat (in stéd of shels) was garnished with skales of some young Tortoise: his Medailles were of saffronned lead, where among stood little staues of the bones of dead beasts. The Sophie drawing néere them, saluted them very courteouslie, and addressing his spéech to the younger man, demanded of whence he was, whether he went, and wherfore he was disguised in that sort, considering that his countenance deliuered him to be a man of other qualitie then his garments made shew of: and if I be not deceiued (sayd the Sophie) you are discended of some noble linage, and are a man likewise of no meane valour. Sir, answered the pilgrime, if ye will somewhat slack the pace of your horse, and (withholding his bridle) make him goe according as we do, if likewise ye will vouchsafe such patience, as to heare my discourse answere to all your questions: I shall satisfie ye concerning the matters enquired, and beside acquaint yee with other things, whereat yee will not a little meruaile. Beléue me, said the Persian king, I am very well contented, and I thinke my horse would gladly ease his pace awhile: then the pilgrime thus began. My Lord, because I perceiue both by your wordes and behauiour, that you are a man more accustomed to commaund then obey,

I would intreat yee not to be offended, if talking familiarlie with yee, perhaps I haue indiscreetly said, that to listen what I conceiue worthie of meruaile, you should enforce your Steed to a more gentle pace, that happily would run so fast as he could, according to the weightie affaires of importance you goe about: which hardlie will permit yee to stay my discourse, being (in regard of your selfe) not so worthie hearing as I esteemed, but rather may yeeld yee more discontent then pleasure. If then I haue offended herein, or shall do by ouer tedious circumstance: I beseech yee imagine I was not well aduised, which in respect of my submission, may the more easily be pardoned. Well, well, quoth the king, vse no more words concerning me, but answere what I haue demanded: for were I not so desirous to knowe, I would not shew my selfe so inquisitiue, and if your discourse be worthie the hearing, as you haue sayd, it cannot be too long for me to listen, or displeasing any way, but verie acceptable.

First then (quoth the Pilgrim) you must vnderstand, that albeit in this estate you behold me, yet am I discended of noble linage, for my father beares the title and crowne of a king, and my mother was sister to the puissant Emperour of Constantinople, a man that (for his manifold vertues) deserueth to be highly esteemed and accounted of. In whose Court, both in my youngest age, and since the time of mine infancie, I was carefully nourished and brought vp: vntill the houre I receiued knighthood, which is no long time since. Notwithstanding, after I began to enterprise my first exploites of good or bad fortune, trusting more to the strength and dexteritie of my body, then reason would I should, for a proofe or triall what I could do: I was so hardie one day, to goe in person alone, to aduenture on the Den or Caue of Rock Alpine, and there assayled the horrible Giants Ferclaste, Androfort and Ergoferant, by whome I was vanquished, and long time kept as prisoner there very miserablie.

miserable. For after I had a great while endured the fight against Androfort, without suffering him to gaine the veris least advantage ouer me: the cruell Ferclaste came trecherously behinde me, and gaue me such a weightie blowe on my helmet, as layde mee well neere dead at his foote: and strange it was that he toke not my life from me, as my ouer much boldnesse had deserued. But as the Glead snatcheth vp a Chicken in her talents, so almost dead, and with like facilitie, did he graspe me vp, carrieng me into a streict and darksome prison: where I endured such miserie and dolor, as hardly could a humaine creature suffer the like, by reason of the woundes I had receiued in the fight, which with the hard enterteinment they gaue mee beside, (being bloodie enemies by nature, and men in whome no naturall compassion harboured) was insupportable. An hundred times they would haue put mee to death, if I had had an hundred liues for them to tirannise on, but that the remembrance of the grace of God, and his sonne crucified for the redemption of man, on whom incessantly I euermore called, was still my succour and comfort: and their brother Ergoferant, a man of more milde and gentle nature then the other were, did all that possibly hee might, to preserue mee from death. Neuertheleste, the cruelltie and rigor of the prison wherein I was so strictly detained, was such, as I knew not whether I lived or no: but the Almightie, in whome continually I trusted, taking compassion vpon my miserie, casting downe his eye of pittie, sent to deliuer mee out of this captiuitie, by an vnexpected helpe, as I shall declare vnto yee.

First giue me leaue to tell yee, that one (without the knowledge of any man) arriued in the great Emperours court of Constantinople, a young knight, so beautifull as an angell in all perfections: yet no one there knew him, neyther did himselfe know who were his parents, but sayd hee was sent thither by a Fairie named Ozyris, who from his

infay-

infancie had nourished and brought him vp, likewise of her he receiued horsse, armour, and all things else beseeming a young gallant that sought the order of knighthood, without which it was not lawfull for any one to meddle with the search of aduentures, or to attempt exploits of armes and chiualrie, whereby renowme and honor was atchieued, and religiously obserued among the professors thereof. I will not trifle time with particuler discourse, how well shaped, lustie, and faire his horsse was, caparasonned so rich and costly, as all the beholders much admired thereat: it shall suffice in one word to tell yee, that neuer was seene in the time of our memorie, a young man, who in countenance, aspect, and assured behauiour, could promise more louely deedes of armes, and galliardise of person, then he did: nor was there any one, whose eyes could be glutted, or hart satisfied with looking on him. imagining that hee was sent from heauen by the grace of God, to do some act of memorie for the benefit of the Empire, as it was not long before it came so to passe. For he who by the aduise of the Fairie was thus sent to the court, to require of the Emperor his order of knighthood, after he had humbly intreated it at his hand: with great honor was it giuen him, and all the worthie obseruations thereto belonging, the most diuine and faire princesse Porphiria, daughter to the Emperour, girding on his sword: in the dooing whereof (a thing worthie noting) the sweete Roseate redness in her chekes, suddenlie changed to such a liuely vermillion hew, that they which before imagined no addition could bee made to make her more beautifull, because she contained such an absolute perfection, by this effect were drawne to a quite contrary opinion. For she seemed such as the Knight himselfe did, vpon whose front sat an assured boldnesse, with a countenance immooueable, blandished with such a sweete grauitie, as if some alteration had suddenly entred his thoughts, and that present affection had surprised him, which (as I learned of such, who take heedfull

regard

regard in like occasion, and therefore marked this the more narrowly) proued so in deede. The morrow after this young youth was made knight, for proofe of the exteriour valour that seemed to be in him, the Emperour feasting and enterteining him accordinglie: gaue him to vnderstand of the monstrous and inhumaine giants Ferclaste and Androfort, who too much iniured and oppressed the whole countrey. This hardie new knight, presently determined to go combat with them, desiring to atchieue by the price of his blood and perrill of his life such immortall praise: withall, to expresse his thankfulnesse to the Emperour, for the great honor he had done him, wherefore he was bound by all meanes possible he could deuise: not being ignorant I warrant ye, that the power of a mightie enemie was not so much to be feared, as the fauour of so great a personage was to be cherished and maintayned.

Being then secretly departed from the Courte, to put in execution this faire enterprise, such was his happie fortune, after a long, doubtfull and dangerous fight, wherein he endured more paine then I am able to rehearse: that he got the victorie of the Giants, killing two of them, and the third he tooke to mercie. This deed which I haue discourses to ye, was of greatest honor that euer was heard of in our time: and the Emperour hearing thereof, was driuen to no little admiration, especially when hee vnderstood the certaine trueth in deed. It is reported, that these newes being blazed abroad in sundry countries, as indeed they were in most knowne places of the world: that the great Sea it selfe was sore troubled, and the greatest part of the forrest of Ardene was distraunched, and the rest of the Trees stood halfe rent in sunder, without any honour of their former verdure. The great flood of Egipt ouerflowed the banckes, and left the common course where it was wunt to glide, being so furious and outragious: as the people of Egipt were more then halfe part drowned, and the whole land so

 couered

couered with water, as many were forced to endure famishment, others (with conceit of greefe) dyed presently. For my selfe, I can hardly be drawne to credit these reports, because such insensible things cannot be mooued by any so great a meruaile: I rather coniecture, that this came from some Poets of those times, who (as Painters doo take an audatious licence, to iustifie by their writing and painting what neuer was) to make the more ample discourse of this deed so full of admiration, did set downe the historie in this manner.

But howsoeuer it was, to come againe to my purpose, I know it well, and that for a certaintie, that the knight hauing vanquished the Giants, and annihillated all their forces, that he came to deliuer me out of that accursed prison, wherein I had beene so long time enthralled. And when hee vnderstood that I was named Pharisor, a knight of some fame, and Nephew to the Emperour: most kindely hee came and embraced me, suffering mee to doo the like to him, by whom I had receiued so great a benefit. Then began I to remember (according as I had often times heard talked of before, and that by no meane personages in times past,) that we should account the day of our deliuerance from any miserable bondage, much more happie then the daye when first we were borne into this world: because from the day of our birth, we goon still forward into diuersitie of misfortunes, but on the day of our deliuerie, wee were restored from such a feare, as we neuer need to stand in doubt of any more: thus are we no lesse bound to the cause of our deliuerance, then to our parents from whom wee receiue life. And heereupon wee contracted together such an intire league of amitie, as death should not seperate or extinct our affections: nor was the loue of the valorous Achilles to Patroclus, Nysus to Eurialus, or Pylades to Orestes, worthy to be compared with my affection to him. For albeit by vngentle fortune wee are sundered the one from the other, the

greefe

greefe and sadnesse I endure for his absence, hath constrained me to disguise my selfe in these habillements as yee see. thus barefooted as I am, to goe and visit the holy Sepulchre, wherein was buryed the precious body of the redeemer of the world: to which place I am bound, by a solemne vowe long since made, to giue him hartie thankes for my deliuerance, and with great deuotion and humilitie to intreat, that it would please him I might sone recouer and see againe my true Achilles: to whom I owe not onely this office of freendship, but an hundred liues if possibile I could haue so many, and this I doubt not but hee will permit me.

As thus the young Pilgrime continued his discourse on the way, they came to a place in the Forrest which was very spatious and plaine, in the midst whereof stood a great thicket of meruailous high trees: and there they heard such a clanching of swordes vppon armour, as all the whole forrest eccho'd therewith, which caused the Sophie and the young pilgrime direct their course thitherward, to see what it was: but as for the olde pilgrime, so soone as hee heard the noyse, he set foote forward more speedie then the winde, to seeke some corner where he might hide him. And there will wee leaue him, and proceed with the Sophie and the young pilgrime: what happened to them shall bee declared in the other chapter, for in this hath beene sufficient said alreadie.

Cap. 3.

How the Sophie found in the forrest two strong and puissant Knightes, that fought together (at all extremities) for a faire horsse, and other things of great value, exposed as guerdon to the conquerour. And how the Sophie would haue taken and carryed away perforce, the horsse for which the knights combatted, which made them run violently vpon him, and of the dissention that ensued betweene them three, how it tooke end, and what happened afterward. Where out may be gathered, how hurtfull a thing arrogancie is, to such as inconsideratly will enterprise more, then they are assured of power to effect: and how in all affayres whatsoeuer, it is necessarie to place aduise and knowledge in the forefront, ere we vndertake to performe any matter of importance.

The great King of Persia being come first to the plaine, where the noyse caused him forsake his way, to know the occasion of that hurly burly: beheld two Knights, of more then common stature, being armed *capape*, who fought very violently together, to sley each other. The one of them was more mightie of body then the other, because hee was of monstrous and Giantlike composition: but in verteritie of armes and valour of courage, he went not so farre beyond his enemie, but that the greater part of the day was spent, yet little aduantage was gained on eyther side. For if the Giants shield were battered in pieces, his body wounded, and his strength much diminished: the knight with whom he dealt had likewise his armour sore mangled, and his bodie iniured in many places, from whence the bloud issued in great aboundance, and at the time of the Persians arriuall there, they were vpon the point to pause a breathing while,

being

being vnable to withstand each other any longer, so were they ouertrauailed with a sharpe and dangerous conflict, which as it had, so was it still to continue betweene them. The Sophie, without enquiring the cause of their debate, or speaking any word to the knights (for he was meruaylous proud and arrogant) allighted from his horsse in great hast, and went to vntie a goodlie faire horsse, which he saw bound to a tree with great chaines of Iron: but as he was about to do it, being somewhat to neere the horsse, he smote him such a violent stroke with his heele vpon the sheld, as made him tumble along so amazedly, that hee lay a good while ere he could recouer himselfe againe: and had not his sheld beene of some temper indeed, he had not liued to complaine of his hurt. But the goodnes of the mettall saued his life for this once, when being risen againe from his astonishment, he would not desist from his former enterprise, which was to take and beare the horsse, that so highly liked him: as well for the beautie and likelihood of goodnes to be in him, as also for the necessitie he was in of one at that time, his owne horsse being ouer much wearyed with trauaile. When the two Combattants perceiued what he intended, they cryed to him, that he could not carry thence the horsse so easily, without buying him more dearly with the price of the combate: and that if he did not forbeare and let the horsse alone, he should by them be well beaten, as his boldnes did deserue no lesse.

The King of Persia hearing these hardie menaces, was enraged with such choller, that hauing fastened his Helmet on his head, and gotten his sword in his hand; he made presently toward them, with resolution to deale with them both, striking first at the Giants legge with such force, as if he had not quickly clapt his sheld before, he had cut it quite off at that blowe. But the Giant who was readie at armes, as any man of his qualitie in those times, to defend this stroake thrust forward his sheld, the greater part whereof

was pared away with the blowe, and laide on the ground, which the other knight perceiuing to whome the Persian addressed him selfe, aiming at a part of his body, which he saw was bare by losse of some of his armour: but he escaping the thrust, gaue the Sophie such a mightie stroke on the Creast, as had it beene any other Helmet, beside this meruailous one and not to bee equalled, as before I haue told ye: he had cleft his head downe to the shoulders, but of such soundnesse was the helmet, as certaine sparkes of fire issued thereout, not receiuing anye other harme by the stroke, whereat the Giant not a little enraged, sayd, that to him alone appertained the chastising of the Persian king, and not to any other: because he had receiued the first stroke at his hands, and besides, himselfe was the more able man for the combate. Likewise, quoth the Giant, to mee belongeth the defence of the horse, and not to thee, as thou knowest well enough, and better can I maintaine the fight then thou, as the dealing betweene vs twaine hath well giuen thée to vnderstand, and would I haue vsed my vttermost forces against thée, I needed not haue wasted so much time in vaine, for long ere this our strife had beene ended. Now because I perceiue there is some more valour in thee then in him, I am willing to spare thee so much as possible I may: wherein (notwithstanding) I would not haue thee ouerweene thy selfe, in presuming to impeach me, when I shall chasten this rusticall fellow, who thus ventured to trouble vs, when I was vpon the point of giuing end to our strife, and thy life together: whereto the knight Combatant thus replyed.

I know well Giant, that commonly the people of thy sorte are mightie and strong, by reason of their greatnesse beyond other men: but withall, they haue much lesse courage, valour and vertue, then presumption and arrogancie, as at this present I may gather by thy wordes which I finde to be more hautie and proud, then either thy

strength

strength or verterittie to armes is, albeit (without shew of fainting) thou hast doone thy best to vanquish me, and neuer dealt I with any one, that held me harder tack then thou hast doone, since the beginning of our combate, at the end wherof I am certainlie perswaded, that I shall remaine the conquerour: as long ere this I had beene, if this knight had not béene our hinderance. And therefore the correcting of him appertaineth to me, and not to thée, as hauing more right to the horsse, the shéeld, and the Cup, the prizes of our combate, then thou hast: thou oughtest therefore to withdraw thy selfe, and leane the fight alone to me, otherwise I shall be enforced to set my selfe against thée with him, thereby to offend thée the more. Much rather had I a thousand times (answered the Giant) to fight against ten such as thou art, then to giue thée such an aduantage: such is the small estéeme I make of thée. These words were no sooner ended, but the Sophie and the knight ran both vpon the Giant: the one to hinder him from dealing alone with the Sophie, and the other to beare away the horse, and alay the pride of the Giant.

Soone after, the Sophie and the Giant (for the same intent) put them selues against the knight, and immediatly (without kéeping any order among them) the Giant and the knight fought against the Sophie: by meanes whereof, the combate was of as long continuance as disorder betwéene them, which was very pernicious and dangerous for them, had it not béene that the young pilgrime, who but newly arriued there vpon this confused bickering, and séeing such an vnruly manner of fight, as in all his lyfe time hee had not séene the like, sharpe, rigorous, and cruell, on each side, and one or other must in the end beare away the worst: he aduentured to seperate them with his staffe, but the blowes fell so thick, that it was quickly cut in thrée péeces, which when hee sawe, and doubting greater harme might happen to him: hee was enforced to keeps aloofe,

and

and stand as a beholder of this cruell combate. Long continued this reasonlesse fight, bee not being able to iudge who had the better: sauing that the Sophie seemed more fresh and lesse wearyed then the other, but at length, with the consent of the Sophie, who had as then least need of all, they sundred themselues to breath a while, when the young Pilgrime thus bespake them.

My Lords, it were a great losse, if three such knights of so great valour, and endued with hautie resolution, as I perceiue you all are, that it may be iudged your equals liue not in the world: should perish so miserablie, as I know you cannot but finish your dayes in this combate begun, onely through want of due order to be obserued among ye, following such reasonable connsell and aduise, as might be giuen yée. Already haue you spent most part of the day, yet no one of yée can certainly make vaunt of any aduantage ouer his enemie: neither (for ought I perceiue) doth any one of yée know which is his aduersarie, nor against whom he ought especially to direct himselfe: for sometimes two beares themselues against one, and then that one ioynes with one of the two against the third: in continuance of which most kinde of fight, it cannot be but all three at the last will miserablie end their liues: so that no man shall be able to say which is the conquerour, or who beares away the honor of the combate, whereby your intent was to merit commendation: but now on the contrary yee shall get no praise at all, but rather bee estéemed as insensible and misgouerned, whereas well yee wot, that reputation and accompt is the principall guerdon of noble and valiant knights, that make profession of armes. Thus shall your parents if ye haue any be grieued, your freends will bewaile your mishaps, and your country, that challengeth your vttermost endeuours, will lament your wilfull losse, besides the sorrow of such as in distresse receiue succour by vertuous knights. Rather should each of yée take one of those launces that leanes against

yonder

yonder Tree, and trie the fortune of the Iouſt one after another, till it may bee ſæne which ſhall bee diſmounted, and then to purſue the combate afterwards, when the third may aduenture as he ſees occaſion. Thus ſhall the victor be diſcerned, and who is woorthie the honor of the field, when hee that pauſed while the other fought, may enter the Liſts againſt the conquerour: but if yee continue in this order ye haue begun, the greater will be your daunger, and all three will foyle themſelues thorow choller and ouer-weening.

Thus ſpake the Pilgrime, and the Combattants (after they had reſted a while) credittting his counceil, and liking well of his aduiſe: tooke each of them a Launce, and mounted on their horſſes to begin the Iouſt, whereto the readieſt were the Giant and the knight, againſt whom he fought before the comming of the Sophie, who could not ſo ſoone recouer his horſſe, becauſe he had ſtrayed aſide, and was graſing alone by himſelfe in the Forreſt. In meane while theſe two ran fiercely againſt each other with their Launces, and met together with ſuch furie, as when two billowes of the ſea méet violently, when the winde carryeth them contrary to their courſe, and then breakes them aloft in the ayre with a moſt terrible murmour. The Launces being ſhiuered in a thouſand pieces, flew like a fire thorow the ayre, and their horſes being ſhrewdly hurt with méeting their ſhoulders together, brake their girts, cruppers, and their other caparisons, and tombled along on the ground with their maiſters, each hauing the ſaddle betwéene his legs: making ſuch a terrible noyſe with the fall, as the ground trembled and ſhooke more then a mile about the place: and they, hauing their Shéeldes battered, and their ſides mortally wounded, lay in a traunce vpon the earth, without mouing either hand or foote, but as though the life and ſoule were parted in ſunder. Whereat the Sophie abaſhed, began not a little to meruayle, hauing ſtoode a good while wayting when the one or other would ryſe and vrge the combate:

 and

and seeing neither of them stirre, he ran to the place where the horsse was tyed, which they combatted for. But seeing he was not there, and could not tell what was become of his Squire likewise, he followed a path that led further into the Forrest, which when he had trackt a long time, not meeting any one, it happened to him as you shall heare in the Chapter following.

Chap. 4.

What fortuned to the Sophie, after the hard encounter betweene the two strong and puissant knights, that fought the Combate in the Forrest. And how he tooke away perforce the great *Lycocephall* from a Damosell, that made a greeuous complaint holding him by the bridle, and howe afterward he departed with her. How the young Pilgrime mounted one of the wounded knights vpon his horsse, the succour which he gaue him, by conducting him to a place, where remedie might be giuen to his wounds. What the old mishapen Pilgrime was, and the speech he had with the mightie Giant *Squamell*: how hee found the Tree whereof the Pilgrime told him, and what happened to him. Wherein may be seene, what chastisement foolish and ouerbold women are woorthie of, that misprise and disdaine the seruice done for them, and with what punishment their ingratitude is often times recompenced. Then by the young and euill fauoured Pilgrime, and the succor they gaue to each of the wounded knights: is signified both vice and vertue, the one euermore accompaning the good, and the other the wicked. They that are guided by vertue, some matter of woorth continually ensues them: and they on the contrarie that follow vice, fall from euill to wursse, and to vtter perdition in the end.

NOw began it to were darke, and the heauens being couered with obscure clowdes, declared to humaine crea-

creatures, that the houre of their rest drew neere: when the great king of Persia, hauing long sought the proud and goodly horse Lycocephall, and perceiuing that he could not finde him, determined to passe that night vnder a Tree in the Forrest, for hee was so tyred and wearyed with going on foote, that he could hold out no longer.

Beeing thus armed as he was, and couched on the greene grasse, he had not lien there any long while, but hee heard a feeble voyce, which he gathered to be the voyce of a woman, lamenting very greeuoustie, vsing these or the like kinde of speeches. Alas most miserable that I am, in what place or part of this darke vast Forrest may I meet with him, whose absence brings to my desires more obscure greefes and anguishes: then this black comfortlesse night, or this place so hideous presents to mine eyes. Alas thou hardie and valiant knight, the most faire and agreeable to my heart that the earth beares: in what nooke art thou hidden that I should not see thee? I haue the eyes of my remembrance so open, as all the obscuritie of this night cannot hinder me, but that I could and can behold thy image and resemblance before me: but to touch and hold thee according as I wish, my misfortune and thy crueltie dooth forbid me. Aye me, if heeretofore when thou sought'st for me, I was any thing offensiue to thee: pardon me I intreat thee. Pardon me (O Loue) thou mightie God of heauen, if in thus dooing I haue offended thy maiestie, that now I should bee woorthie of so seuere punishment. Tell mee faire horse, tell mee I pray thee, where hast thou left thy noble maister? I am deceiued if thou be not the beast he so highly esteemeth, and on whom he was mounted the last time I sawe him. How happens it that thou art thus strayed from him? and what is the cause thou hast forsaken him? But foolish that I am, speake I not to a beast, which hath no more habilitie to answer me then hee who is not present whome I so dearely loue? O vnkinde, peruerse, and detestable fortune. O vnhappie

Lucinda, what deitie hath coniured against thee, to make thée so miserable: as hee that loued thée when thou didst disdaine him, should now hate when thou fœlest & estéemest more of him then thine owne selfe, thine eyes, or thy heart? Ah Lucinda, mischaunce follow thée Lucinda, a Princesse most vnluckie and vnfortunate, thy mishap may well befall thy freend, because he flyes from thée now when thou sékest him. These lamentations in such sort pronounced, as if they had beene vttered out of the hollow of a Rock: or the strokes vpon an Anuile: that euen as the fire softneth ware, so must it haue beene some Hircanian Tigar, or some vnnaturall deuouring Lionnesse, but would therewith be moued to pittie. But the Sophie, who was so proud and arrogant as possible might be, was not any thing moued at all: but hauing by the cleere light of his Helmet discouered a young beautifull damosell, that held the goodly horsse by the bridle, went presently to her, and giuing her a rude thrust, toke away the horsse from her: whereon being quickly mounted, he rode to séke his Squire, and the waye which guided him the day before. And riding part of the night by his lightsome Helmet, by this rough encounter and vnmanly iniurie, the damosell remained greatly astonished: yet recouering courage and spirit, she followed him, and a hundred times she called him théefe, robber, and discourteous knight, vnworthie to ride on such a horsse, or euer thencefoorth to weare armour on his body. And hauing breathed foorth a thousand such like hatefull spéeches against him. Canst thou (quoth she) inhumaine as thou art, thus vndeseruedly wrong me? thou maist liue to sée the day, that thy Lady shall despise thy teares and intreats, as now thou disdaynest and makest small account of mine: and let a more cruell shaft, then euer Cupid bare in his Quiuer, wound thée thorowly, to bring thée into the middest of most violent flames, and then vtterly to consume thée to cinders. But of all these spéeches the Sophie made no reckoning,

but

but held on his way, as I told yee before, where we will leaue him, and the disconsolate Lady in the Forrest: whose mishap may well serue as an example to young damosels, that beeing sometime beloued with true and sincere affection, hold such kindnes in contempt, and oftentimes make scorne of men of great valour, who merit better fauours then hatred and disdaine: which in the end they knowe so well how to reuenge, as they shall repent and bemone their estates more miserablie, then did this Princesse, of whom we haue made mention in the former Booke, and whom ye now behold consounded with folly, discheneled running about the fields, hauing forsaken the king of high Misia her father, to meet the strong and puissant Giant Squamell: who thus badly recompenced the seruices she did him, by manifold hazards wherein shee aduentured her life, onely for his loue. Let Ladyes then bee carefull, least they fall into any such inconuenience, and so making like proofe, there ensue like punishment: for they are better taught, that learne to be wise by others harmes, then they that fetch wisedome out of their owne follies. So comming againe to our historie, we will speake of the two knights, whome wee left halfe wounded to death in the Forrest.

The Historie speaking of them, saith, that they both reuiued from their traunce, the one so soone as the other, and that the Giant was he who first espyed the Sophie to be gon, hauing caried away the horse with him: wherefore all wounded as he was, he ran presently (as he had beene mad) into the Forrest, wherein when hee was but a little entred, hee met the old pilgrime wee spake of before, who ran thither to hide himselfe, when hee heard the noyse of the combate betweene the Giant and the Knight. This was an old Necromancer, that could foretell to passengers their good and euill fortune to come, and knew by the lineature of theyr handes, till what age they should liue, and what day, what houre, by what aduenture, and howe they should dye.

He knew by heart all the bookes of the Sibelles, of Circes, of Medea, of all the old liuing Magitians, and the Magitians of former times. And because he knew that the Fairie Ozyris was his aduersarie, and the greatest enemie in the world to his charmes and enchantments, likewise that she had greater skill and knowledge then he, and specially that for his ruine, and such as he loued, she had nourished the onlie knight the cause of our historie: he had opposed by an anticharme this strong Giant Squamell and his brother, who by their owne nature were endued with most high prowesse: yet notwithstanding by deuillish subtiltie hee preserued them still from death, and to them oft times he gaue admirable and supernaturall strength. So that knowing him to be in quest of his horse, his sheild, and other aduentures, and chéefely, that he earnestly desired to haue the enchaunted Cup, whereof he sometime had heard great report: hee had put them all into the custodie of this strong Giant, hauing withall incited and perswaded him in a dreame, that he should combate against the most puissant knight on the earth, and so set downe (as prizes for the conquerour) the Sheild, the horse, and the Cup, whereof wee haue spoken. Heereupon hee should holde open Iouste to all commers and goers in the Forrest, causing the Forrest to bee commonly called The Forrest of great Aduentures: and alreadie had he performed many fayre exploits, by meanes whereof he was much renowmed thorow the world, and very farre were his deedes talked of: whereupon the knight (so hardly handled) came to combate with him, of whom heereafter we will speake more liberalie, as also by what aduenture, and for what reason he was thither conducted.

But now let vs a little while speake of the Giant, who séeing the olde man, of whome hee had no more knowledge then if hee had neuer seene him: because hee could disguise himselfe in diuers sortes, as now he did in the habit of a pilgrime, to deceiue such great numbers as passed that waye,

and

and as he had deceiued Pharisor, if the meeting of the Sophis had not preuented it. The Giant at the first sight of him began to be somewhat afrayd, seeing him looke so vgly and hidious: but the old Enchanter that very well knew him, began to reason after this manner.

Most generous and puissant knight, as this day liueth not thy like vnder heauen, who now being mortally wounded doest trauerse this darke forrest of high aduentures: stay thy selfe, and forbeare (if thou be wise) to run thus as thou doest, to finde and reconer what the destinies will not permit thée as yet. And if thou art not enemie to thy selfe, but hast regard of thine owne life, heare and credit my councell, and doo as I shall presently direct thée: concerning what I say vnto thée, who I am, and for what cause I am so carefull of thée, the effect shall acquaint thee withall. Know then that I am the old and auncient Necromancian Charonifer, father to great Minofoll, of whom (it may bee) thou hast sometime heard some speech: such as thou nowe seest mee, haue I liued and reigned more than a thousand yeeres. It is in my power to make the black night a fayre and bright day, and the fairest day againe to make the most darkesome night. I can make the Moone and all the starres to discend from heauen downe to the earth, by my charmes and enchauntments: but a woman of great wisedome oftentimes hinders me from dooing what I would. I knew thy graundfathers, who were great kings and Monarches on the earth. I haue seene to my ioy, the mightie Horfella thy mother, who (in her life time) was very deere to me, and whome I loued as mine owne life: for of thy forefathers and great vnckles did I receiue my first nourriture, and was brought vp from my very youngest yeeres: in recompence whereof, I haue euermore cherished and loued such as were discended of them, especially thee and thy brother Nabot, whom I esteeme as much as thee, you twaine beeing the most hardie and valiant of all your linage and race.

So that for your aduancement, I haue dayly preserued yee from infinite perrils and mortall dangers, whereinto (according to your destinies) you were readie to fall: but by mine arte I haue preuented all inconueniences, which I perceiued were threatned against yée. And namely, let me remember thée of the deuillish spirits that were in the Castell of the Enchantereſſe Melanda, which could not be chased thence but by one of the best knights in the world: likewise the Combate thou badst with them, by commaundement of the Lady whom thou seruest: then maist thou likewise bee mindfull, of the great sorrowe and vexation thou wert to endure, before thou couldst vanquish them, and from which (for certaine) thou couldst not haue escaped without death, but onely by mine arte and by my meanes, which succoured and defended thee: for there did I so handle the matter, that in the end thou didst obtaine the victorie, as thy selfe doost very well knowe: and nowe againe thou art in farre greater daunger of death, if thou doost not as I shall say vnto thee.

Goe then and follow the path which now thou treadest, thorow the forrest, vntill that hauing many times turned by my circle, made in manner and forme of a Laborynth, thou perceiuest thy selfe to be in the middest thereof, where thou shalt see a great Tree, straite as any Ceder, which neuer had braunches, leaues, nor fruite, since first it sprang from out the earth. In that tree thou shalt behold a doore open, which notwithstanding is now so fast shut, as no one can discerne that euer it hath beene opened, neither shall such as come nére it, see it, except it please me: those onely whome I will, shall perceiue it, but others that by chaunce light vppon it, shall imagine it to bee a huge great Rock, wherein is a strong Caue, full of Lyons, Tigars, Beares, and other sauage and cruell beasts. But see that boldly thou enter therinto, and discend lowe vnder the earth by certaine stayres, which thou shalt finde made expressely for this

cause:

cause: and when thou art discended an indifferent waye, thou shalt finde a flood, the water whereof runneth so violently, as the flood is very fearefull to behold. Uppon this water thou shalt see a black Barque, furnished with oares and sayles, necessarie for conueyance to the place where I make my continuall abiding. Enter boldly into the vessell, enter as thou art, without dread of any thing, and couching thy selfe therein, keeping thy selfe alwayes beneath, and thy mouth fast closed, remoue not at all: for from thence vppon the flood (which continually runneth downewards) shalt thou bee brought to a place, where thou shalt receiue helpe for thy mortall wounds, for in very deed thou art somewhat daungerouslie wounded. Afterward thou shalt be aduertised what is expedient for thee to doo, to merit glorie and reputation among the Gods, that make their abode in the inferiour part of the world: and if thou dost otherwise then as I haue tolde thee, thou canst not any way escape the death.

If the Giant were amazed at the first beholding of this olde man, no doubt hee was much more now, hearing his wordes, and yet was it more meruaylous then all the rest, that when he had concluded his speech, there appeared in his place a flame of fire, which beeing conuerted into smoake, was carryed heere and there thorow the ayre, without appearance left of any other thing, which caused the Giant to stand along while pensiue, without aduenturing on any resolution an indifferent space: but after hee had considered with himselfe the wordes of the old Magitian, he gaue credit to them, and determined to do as he had willed him, by reason that the losse of his bloud from forth his wounds, made him feele his strength to diminish very much, and a very great weaknesse conquer all his body. In this determination he put himselfe vppon the way, to finde the Tree whereof the olde man had tolde him: in which searche wee will leaue him, to speake of the other knight so cruelly wounded.

He(as writes the Historian)being come to himselfe againe so soone as the Giant, could not yet arise so readily, for hee was of a more weake and soft complexion. Which Pharisor (who had beene an eye witnesse of their encountring) beholding, went to him, and hauing vnlaced his Helmet, saw that his visage, which naturally was faire: was now so spent and discoulloured, as one could perceiue nothing of his wonted perfection. Hereat he began to greeue, for hee was of good nature, very pittifull and succourable to the afflicted, and seeing the knight complained verye much of his woundes, which made him now feele a dangerous and mortall anguish: he began to comfort him so well as possiblie he could. And seeing that still his blood wasted in great abundance, he despoyled himselfe of his shirt, which was so white as hart could wish: and hauing torne it in peeces, therwith he bound vp his wounds very handsomly. When the knight feeling more ease then he did before, and that his vigour in better sort encreased: he intreated to be mounted vppon his horse, which he did by the helpe of Pharisor, who leading the horse by the bridle, guided him by sundry pathes thorow the Forrest, seeking where he might finde any village or house, or any one that knew howe to cure the knights woundes: with kinde comfortings and other freendly speeches, he thus conducted him along the forrest, when the night being spent at their entrance thereout, they came to a very great champion plaine: when the auaunt courrer or messenger of the day, began to shew his Christalline beautie, thorow his siluer locks, whence soone after followed the bright splendour of the goulden Sun. Then can they discerne a farre of in this desert, a smoake that seemed to come from the Chimney of some house: which made the fayre pilgrims to guide the horse that way. But hee had not gon much ground, till hee sawe the knight giue a signe of falling from his horse, for he was suddenly surprised with the trembling fit of an extreame ague, caused thorow the deadly pain of his wounds:

which

which beeing vnbound for ease, let the bleud againe issue forth, as thorew pipes or gutters. This was no little greefe to the pilgrime, who toke him from his horse in his armes, when setting him to the grounde, the knight began to swoune againe: wherewith Pharisor was so troubled, as fearing he was neere his death, hee layde him along on the the grasse, and bound againe his wide gaping woundes. Then taking him in his armes, hee got vp on the Knights horse, and so caryed him before him ouerthwart the saddle: and hauing long ridden that way as he beheld the smoake, there ensued as you shall heare in the follewing chapter.

Chap. 5.

How the wounded Knight, which the faire Pilgrime conducted, was brought into the lodging of a good and holy Hermit, where his wounds were healed, by the praiers which the good Hermit made to God. The great miracle that happened, likewise howe the Knight was baptized and made a Christian. Whereby is signified vnto vs, how God disperseth the effects of his almightie power to such as serue him: who are oftentimes found rather in poore and simple Cottages, and in desert places, then in the golden Pallaces or wealthie Citties. Likewise is in this Chapter remembred: that the ayde and succour of the meanest, may serue and profit the greatest personages.

Harisor the fayre Pilgrime, so long, and by so many sundry pathes in the desert, conducted (in sort as yee haue read in the former Chapter) the halfe dead body of the hardie and vertuous knight: that about the houre of mid-day hee discouered the place, whence he saw the smoke to ascend forth. Thither hasted hee with all the speed hee could vse,

 hoping

hoping in that place to méete with some one that could giue remedie to the knights wounds: for very great care he had of him, because of the bountie and valour he had discerned in him. But drawing néerer to this long expected place, hee thought his hope would be deceiued, by reason he sawe it to be but a little lodging, couered with Reedes and Rushes, in which he could not be perswaded to finde what he would. This made him halfe minded to change his way to some other part, yet something still houered about his heart, that hee should venture to continue on his waye, and sée what might be done in this little slender habitation, builded in a desert so barren, for some vnlooked for body might (perhaps) abide there. Resoluing thus, he discended from the horse, and brought the knights body before the dore of the house, which hauing thrust open, he saw an olde man, with his head and beard as white as snowe, sitting before a little pan of fire, chafing his bloodlesse and withered haynes, and reading in a booke which he held vppon his knee. The good olde man was somewhat astonished when he sawe the pilgrime, but much more when he beheld the Knights halfe dead body before his dore. In like case was Pharisor, séeing the old mans head and beard so venerable, with an aspect of holinesse much to be admired: so that albeit he was an assured hardie knight, yet was he surprised in such sort, as he durst not open his mouth to speake vnto him, but with more great honor and reuerence, yea, with more regard, then if he had spoken to the greatest Monarch on the earth. Beside, the historian (speaking hereof) saith, that he set his knée on the threshold of the olde mans dore, and spake vnto him in this manner.

Father, for that thy white head and beard, with the venerable aspect of thy countenance, makes me conceiue that thou hast experience in many affayres, and that in thée abideth more good then in other men, by reason of the holinesse of life which thou leadest in this desert, farre from all euill

company or conuersation of the wicked, who oftentimes (by their frequenting) induce the good to doo ill, whereby they incurre the wrath of God and his indignation: where contrarywise, hee regardeth with a cherefull eye such as doo well, and (as thou) hauing repented their sinnes, despise the manner of dissolute life, full of voluptuous and carnall concupiscence: lead a life austere and full of solitude, to temper and appease (by these meanes) the violence of inordinate appetites and euill desires, whereby they are naturally incited, and prouoked to doo badly, enclining rather to vice then to vertue. If thou haue any humanitie, and art not altogether naked of swete amitie, whereby humaine societie is preserued: I desire thee in the name of God, to haue pittie and compassion on the miserable estate of one of the most valiant and brane Knights, that the Sunne euer vouchsafed to loke vpon, whome thou beholdest cruelly wounded, and readie to die heere before thy dore. Father, do thy best endeuour to cure his wounds, wherewith thou sest hee is vnnaturally iniured: and if the heauens haue not so fauoured thee, that by humaine cunning thou canst giue remedie: or if thou perceiuest them to be incurable, and that he must needes presently dye: yet to the end the soule may not perish together with the body, let him receiue by thy hands the holy Sacrament of Baptisme, by the meane whereof, and the grace of God assisting, men are washed and made cleane from originall sinne. For he hath told me, that by nation he is a Pagane, contrary to the beleefe that Christians doo professe: doo thou then thy dutie, and God shall yeeld thee thy recompence in heauen. If my wordes may not incite thee to this christian worke: yet let the hardnes of the pittious estate wherein thou beholdest him, at the least moue thee to humaine compassion. Thus spake the fayre pilgrime, whereto the good olde man thus answered.

Yee to whome all that liue and die doo seruice and obeysance, the great Father of the world, he that created it, and

all things that inhabite therein, commandeth me (pilgrime) to doo what thou requireſt: for it is his will that wee doo good one to another, and likewiſe that we ſhould render good for euill, as well to our enemies as to our freends. And although the contrarietie of his religion from ours, might ſomewhat withhold me from accompliſhing thy deſire: yet wil I vſe my very vttermoſt endeuoure for thy ſake, whom I know to be a Chriſtian, becauſe I am commaunded from aboue to do ſo. Not that I haue any ſkill in the art of medicine or Chirurgerie, for I vnderſtand nothing tending therto, much leſſe knowledge haue I in the nature or vertue of hearbes: but I helpe and giue remedie to the body by ſuch meanes as thou ſhalt perceiue: bring him then into my lodging, and bow thy knées in prayer to God, as thou beholdeſt me to make my oriſons. Pharifor obeyed the Hermits commandement, brought in the body of the Knight, which could not moue or ſtirre more then a dead man: the old man knéeling downe by him, opening his eyes and lifting vp his hands, hauing thrée times made the ſigne of the Croſſe vpon the body, and ſoftly vttered certaine priuate ſuffrages and Oriſons, the pilgime being likewiſe on his knées: with an high voyce, and a hart full of deuotion, he layd a prayer of this ſubſtance or effect.

The Hermits prayer.

O Mightie Sonne of God, Sauiour and redeemer of the world, whome God thy Father vouchſafed to leaue the eſſence of thy diuinitie, and to forſake thy ſupreme throne, to come heere on earth, taking the habit of our humanitie, and following the ſame, tokeſt humaine fleſh and birth, in the wombe of a virgin of long time choſen and elected by thée, pure, white, and immaculate, of the race and linage of Ieſſe: to abide and endure with vs the ſelf-ſame troubles and aduerſities, which our miſerable life is ſubiect vnto: thou God almighty, all good, and which euermore

more hast thy seat full of mercie and loone, wide open to receiue the praiers and requests, which we make to thee in our necessities, and art alwayes readie to doo vs good, receiue vs euermore in thy mercie. O God of peace and concord, who being diuine, immortall and most mightie, hast power to quench the thirst of the thirstie, the hunger of the famished, to clothe the naked, heale all maladies, and comfort the afflicted. Thou (I say) who hast not only taken humaine flesh for life, subiect to endure many euils and afflictions amongst men: but also didst beare vppon thy diuine forehead, the cruell sweat of death, and endure the seuere passion thereof, to saue vs from eternall death, whereto for our sinnes we were condemned. Thou (O God) who only hast power with one word, or with one winke of thine eye, to arrest the strong horrible tempests of the winds, that canst trouble the earth, that roullest and calmest the waters in the Seas, and ridest on the heauens when thou pleasest, or slackest as thou likest the celestiall fierie lights. Thou that long since hauing taken humanitie amongst vs, being in Samaria, hadst power to giue health to ten poore lepers, they beleeuing in thee, prayed and were healed. Then a poore man troubled with the palsie, and one that was sick of the dropsie by thee were likewise cured, they being one day of the Sabaoth presented before thee: by the selfe-same power and goodnes, a poore crooked woman, that could not help her selfe, and shee that for the space of twelue yeares was sick with a flux of bloud: were by thee recouered to their former estate and health. The centurions seruant, that altogether grounded his hope in thee. An other Leaper, and one that had his hand dried vp, with the poore widdow lamenting for the approching death of hir Son. And Iayrus, whose daughter was euen ready to die: they all hauing recourse to thee, & calling for thy aid with a cheerful hart, & firm beléefe of thy omnipotent power: were al by thy goodnes made sound & comforted: seeing then that thy power is alwaies one, & as great at this

present

present as it then was, and so shalbe for euer, that thou art full of the selfe same mercie and goodnesse: I beseech thée, if euer I haue sayd any thing that hath pleased thée, if euer I haue doone any thing agréeable to thy liking, if euer I requested any thing, if euer thou takest pleasure in this austere kinde of life, which héere I lead in this desert, by the intire affection I haue toward thée, and the burning desire in me to serue and honor thee: I beseech thée O good God, that thou wouldst deigne in pitty to regard this miserable corps. And if thou seest, (as for certaine thou seest and knowest all things) that thou canst draw any seruice to thee from out of it, by suffering it to liue longer time in this world, thy mightie hand being nowe vpon the man, and the healing of his mortall wounds so neere deaths doore: giue him thy grace, that he may see and acknowledge for truth, that it is by thy grace, and from thy hand, that hee receiueth all things hee hath in this world. If not (Lord,) but that thou wilt call him to thée, and that his houre is come: receiue and conduct his soule I beseech thee, into thy celestiall paradise, where (for the rest) giue him what thou better knowest then I, is necessary for him.

Thus prayed the good Hermit, and at the same instant baptized him, in the name of the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy ghost: saying and doing all that is requisite in the holy Sacrament of Baptisme, in the presence of Pharisor, who serued as his Deacon. Then suddenly discended from heauen vppon the Hermits lodge, such a cleere brightnesse, more golden then the Sun: that the Hermit and the Pilgrime had their eies so dazeled therewith, as they were constrained to lye flat with their faces on the earth, as if they would haue kissed it. And more astonned were they, then if it had mightily thundered, because they heard a voyce from heauen, vttering these words: Be whole braue knight, to the ende thou mayst dye for maintenance of the Christian faith, whereinto already thou art receiued.

Then

Then suddenly the bright splendour vanished away, when the Hermit and Pharisor arose, and the Knight so sone as they, as sound, lustie and pleasant, as if his body neuer had béene wounded. Notwithstanding, he greatly merueiled to sée himselfe in such a place, betwéene two men whom he knew not: hee béeing of the opinion, that hee had béene but in a slépe, and all the paine hee had felt of his woundes, was no more then a dreame. Yet he remembred all that was past before, since, and at that instant, especially Pharisors request to the Hermit, and the prayer the Hermit made to God for him, also the bright clérenes that appeared, the baptisme he had receiued, with the voyce from heauen, which he well vnderstood: whereat being not a little abashed, he was strongly confirmed in the christian religion, for which euer after hee determined to imploy all his forces till death, contrary to the promise he made, when he departed from the kingdome of Phez. Then being well remembred and certaine of all these things, which he had séene and vnderstood, he humbly thanked the holy man: who tolde him, that to God onely he should returne thankes, for his health came from him, and no other. As for him, he but prated, and afterward made a breefe Sermon, wherein he examplified & declared the points of christian religion, wherein the king of Phez toke singuler pleasure. This doone, the good man and Pharisor desiring him to tell them, of whence and what he was, and wherefore he fought so manfully against him that had so cruelly wounded him: hee began to recount vnto them all his aduentures, in manner as you shall read héereafter.

Chap. 6.

The high deedes of armes and chiualrie, doone by the Knight Gerileon, how hauing taken landing in a desert place, hee trauailed long time on foote, before he could any where rest himselfe. The pleasant talke and deuise his Squire Geliaste had with him in walking, to giue him pleasure and passe away the time. In which may bee discerned, how much such ought to suffer as trauaile to gaine honor. And by the speeches of the squire Geliaste, how ridiculous the reasonings of the Sophists are, who by outward appearance resemble sound men, and such as by their faces are supposed of good health: yet inwardlye are attainted with mortall diseases. Because (at first sight) their arguments seeme to bee matter of trueth: but beeing sounded to the bottome, they are found to bee nothing else but follyes, mockeries and meere dreames.

IT is now high time, that wee should remember the fortunes and aduentures, of the famous and vertuous knight Gerileon, because of him our historie beares title, and for his sake we haue composed in this second Booke, following the former order you read before: the aduentures of the loyall louer, of the Sophie of Persia, and the puissant Squanell. By discontinuing a little in speech of them, with repetition of them hereafter in time and place conuenient: we shall giue yee to vnderstand, that this whole discourse is builded to no other end, then for him, and to his euerlasting commendation. To this end, that the diuersitie of these things, which are most agreeable to the greater part of readers, may bring ye the more pleasure and recreation. To come then againe where wee left: yee must conceiue, that after

after he had long time sailed on the sea, with the fauour and fortune of the windes that then gouerned, when he had conquered the shippes of the Giant Squamell, with them that were his Pirates and theeues, that spoiled Merchants of their goods and treasure, where he heard tidings of his horse & armes, which he had stollen: he was in the end (by violence of a sudden tempest) cast vppon Armenia, in a place farre off from the Forrest of great aduentures, and which was as barren and desolate, as that which before we decipherd vnto yee, where by the prayer of the holy Hermit, the king of Phez recouered his wounds. Being arriued in a porte of slender assurance for the safetie of ships, he minded to go on land a while: till the tempest (which raged so extreamely, and made the Seas vnfit for passengers) were ceased, not for any longer abyding there.

Heere vppon, he commaunded the maister of the Ship to launche out a Squiffe, whereinto hee entred with his armour and his Squire: desiring the Knight, whome hee had saued from shipwrack on the Sea, as yee haue heard, which was he for whose meeting he enterprised this voyage, to tarie in the Ship for the safetie thereof, and to hinder that the Pirate which brought them against the aduentures and forces of Nabot and Squamell, should doo them no more iniurie, or flie away with the Shippe which hee had gotten from him, and so thereby driue his iourney to a further delay or lingering. The knight, who had learned all his disseignes, the occasion of his searche, and other aduentures, promised to fulfill his request: so vnder this promise going on shoare, he was somewhat abashed, to see a place so great and spacious, to be so desert, barren, and comfortlesse, for he could not discerne one Tree, where vnder he might take a little repose: which he not a little desired, because hee was crazie and ouer much wearied, with his long continuance in the Shippe on the Seas, whereto hee was not accustomed, and in soothe it cannot but bee yrkesome and

tedious, to such as are not acquainted with that kinde of trauaile. So finding a little path on the port where he landed, he kept on his way, to see if wandering further from the Sea, which was inhabitable by the sterilitie of the place: he could finde anye bush or shadowed plot, where hee might rest awhile and take the fresh ayre. For the countrey of it selfe was naturally enflamed with extreame heate, and the shade of the ship which he had so lately left, was likewise hot and troublesome to him. But when he had gon about the space of a mile, hee found himselfe so ouercharged with his armour, which till then hee alwayes had worne vppon his body: as he was constrained thorow the extreame weight he felt thereof, to disarme himselfe, hauing desire to walke longer time, and more at his ease, vntill he could see some place conuenient for him to rest in. And as Goliaste his Squire was beginning to take off his armour, perceiuing that hee must beare this heauie burden on foote, hee thus spake to his maister.

In sooth my Lord, this Armour dooth so well become ye, as no heat (me thinkes) should cause yee to disarme your selfe: for in mine eye, seeing you armed by me, I see Saint Michaell the faire Archangell, leading me with such securitie into paradise: as all the deuils in hell cannot get me into their hands: you are so proper and of so goodly appearance, when you are armed, as ye cannot meet any Lady vpon the way, but presently she will become enamoured of ye. And it is no small thing, to gaine the loue of faire Ladyes that may be met withall: for such a one she may be, as is not to be refused. To o hers likewise you seeme so redoubted, as there is not a beast in all the world, but beholding you approching, will flie farre enough from yee. Whereas if ye vnarme your selfe: I am afraide I shall bee driuen to trie the goodnes of my legges, which were my great sorrow if any thing should so happen. It seemeth when you are armed, that you were brought into this world, and fourmed

an excellent mould for an armour, or that you were borne armed, and made expressely to beare this ornament. If God had bene so gratious to me, as to haue made me of such perfection and propertie, as that I had bene borne to weare armour: I would neuer make my selfe naked thereof for any other clothing, notwithstanding the greatest heate that might be, but he hath not made me apt to beare such honor, or any way to defend it. If I carry it in mine armes, and anyone meete me therewith, hee will say: that I am some Iugler, so decked to make the world laughter and pastime. And therefore (my Lord) I beseech yee credit my counsell, to suffer your Armour still on your body as it is: for what know ye may suddenly happen, and what but your armour can do ye seruice. As for me, these armes will not serue me to doe any thing therewith: because I know, as I haue bin a little instructed, that from my birth I should be but faint hear'ed and a coward. Whereto the knight, who knew wel his squire spake these wordes but to make him merrie and pleasant: smyling to himselfe, thus answered.

My freend, I pray thee carry no such dismay in thy minde, as to daunt whether I am armed or vnarmed: for I rather doubt this will make thee become ouer courragious, whereby I may be held suspected, that I haue not onstructed thee as I ought to doo, but rather haue kept thee fasting wurse then in the time of Lent. Therefore onely do as I command thee, carrie mine armour: and thou shalt see, we shalbe as merrie afterward, as now, and that no furious beast dare venture to make thee trie thy legges.

My Lord (quoth Geliaste) I am most constant in obeying your commaund, yet doo I esteeme it a much better aduice, that I should weare your armour on my body, for the more easie cariage: and that you should come after mee, and call me my Lord, and I to call you my squire Geliaste, yea, it is necessarie you should doo whatsoever I commaund yee. For when you are armed, and I not, I come after yee, I call yee

my Lord, and you call mee Geliaste, and which is more, I obey and doo all that euer ye bid me. And questionlesse, reason requireth this which I saye, because there is no other difference betweene vs: for wee are both men, and as you haue beene armed, so am I nowe at this present, doone by your helpe and assistance: it followeth then, that you do me the selfe same honor, and much more then I can doo to you, when you are as I am now. For it is but armes and gaye garments that honors the person, and you will not deny, but that you are honoured by your armes. See I pray ye if the strong Nabor, if his brother Squamell, if the Sonnes of the old Grandowin, if the puissant king of Phez and his bretheren, if the great king of Persia, if the braue king Floridamant, of whome is made such rumour and renowne thorowe the world. If the monstrous king of Scithia, or any of so many other woorthy personages, that gayned praise and reputation by armes: had euer wun such honour and account, if they had not beene alwayes armed: your selfe, had you euer vanquished the strong Giants, which I feared would haue eaten mee, Ferclast and his brethereu: if these weapons had not beene in your hands, and this armour on your body? Truely, without these armes you had beene but in bad case: and thereof ought honor be done to armes, and to such likewise as beare them. Certainly (quoth the knight) Geliaste my good freend, there is to much sophistrie and deepe sence in thyne argument, to perswade that which thou proposest. How? sophistrie my Lord? sayd the Squire: nay rather reason enough, when I receiue no sufficient contrary answer. For there is no other difference betweene vs, but that you are oftentimes armed when I am not, and then I honour yee, when yee make no account of me, but in dooing yee seruice. It then ensueth by like reason, that when I am armed and you not: you should doo such dutie to me as I haue sayd: In other things wee are equall and alike, as by reason I will prooue vnto yee, which (as yee know)

know) should alwayes be held of greatest truetb. For when you laugh, I laugh likewise: when you weepe, I weepe also: when you goe, I goe: when you are on horsebacke, I am not on foote, and when you are on foote, I am not on horsebacke. If you be agreeued, so am I: if you be amorous, I am so as well as yee, when yee eate, I eate: when you drinke, I am thirstie: when you sleepe, I snort. What will yee that I shall say for further proofe? in breefe, there is no other difference betweene vs, then as I haue sayd. By my faith (sayd the knight (who tooke great pleasure in hearing him thus prate like a Parret,) Thou saist true Geliaste: but tell me I pray thee, howe canst thou saue thy selfe from this answere, and not confesse thy selfe to bee vanquished?

Thy father, thy mother, and mine: are they one selfe same persons? are wee two as great, the one as the other? thou well perceiuest we are not, for I am far greater then thou art: we are not likewise of one teincture, nor of haire alike. When we dine, when we eate or drinke, we sit not both at one table, thou dinest and suppest at my dispence, or by my meanes, I neuer dine or sup at thine, nor by thy helpe. When I combate, thou dooest not: I looke the enemie in the face, and stand to him, thou turnest thy back and flyest: when I am assured, thou art fearefull: and sometime when I smite, thou bearest away the blowes, or takest thee to thy heeles, and so escapest.

Continuing these speeches, with diuers other to passe away the time, as the Knight was highlye contented with this pleasant kinde of arguing: they followed still the path that had conducted them from the Sea, and were come now the space of two good myles, when a far off the Knight discouered a little thicket, which was round beset with fayre Bushes: this gaue him some hope, that there hee should find some Spring or Fountaine, where hee might quench his thirst, which pained him greatly, and shaddow sufficient

to

to take the fresh ayre, and rest himselfe as he had some need. Hereupon he continued his way thitherward, and beeing there arriued, was glad hee had found the thing he desired. For this place was round enuironed with great goodlye Trees, where vnder was a most pleasing shade, and in one part thereof was a most fayre cleere fountaine, the sourse whereof was engirt with a daintie sweet spring, the greatnes whereof contained three acres of ground. The grasse was there so greene and cheerefull as possible might be, and cheefely there, more then in any other part adioining: wherat the Knight greatly meruailed, and without care of seeking after any other particuler occasion, but contenting himselfe with the naturall fertilitie of the place, proceeding from the riuer the onely cause thereof: hee went about to beholde, and mounting on a higher part of the ground, to rest himselfe vnder a coole shaddowe, he fell a sleepe, and so did Geliaste likewise, where (for necessitie sake) we wil giue them leaue to rest a while.

Chap. 7.

How Gerileon being at rest, and sleeping in the wood neere the fountaine, which he had so fortunately found: was awaked by his squire, to heare the pleasing lamentable voyce of a Lady, that did sing there hard by, which hauing vnderstood, he intreated the Lady to sing the same Song againe. The talkes which the Lady had with him, during which time, there came vppon them an horrible cruell monster, called the sauage Polippe, wherewith Gerileon began a fierce and daungerous fight. From whence may bee gathered, that there where man dooth purpose to be safe and at quiet, sleeping long time in delight and voluptuousnes: there sinne (which is a sauage monster, and which changeth and enchaunteth it selfe into diuers fourme, yet all most dangerous) commeth and assayleth him so fiercely, as hee hath worke

enough

enough to defend him selfe. But if hee can ouercome him, then is he greatly to be commended, and merits wonderfull renowme and reputation.

THe good and vertuous knight Gerileon remained a sleepe, according as you heard in the end of the former chapter, about the space of two houres: but Geliaste could not sleepe so long, because in his slumber he dreamed that he heard a sweet hermonie, wherein his thoughts toke very great pleasure. So that when he awaked, he plainlye heard what he dreamed on, no imagination, but a very perfect voyce singing a song. He heard a femenine voyce, very sweete and mellodious, which sang with pleasure to the eare, yet pittifully in regard of her cause, a song in the Spanish language, the substance whereof hereafter followeth. Nor was there any humaine heart that heard it: but as it would haue beene highly pleased, so could it not choose but compassion would haue moued it. The Song was thus.

The Ladyes Song while Gerileon slept.

BLinde, cruell bowe-man looue,
that with enuenomde dart:
Outragiously enflamest my brest,
and murdrest my poore hart.
Alas, what wouldst thou more?
thou makest me lingring stay:
And wilt not send Phinander home,
whom all my thoughts obay.
The promisde day is come,
when fayre Ozyris sayd:
My long distresse should haue an end
and all my greefes allayd.
Yet am I still detaynde,
within this cruell prison:

Of fierce inhumaine Polyppe,
who keepes me gainst all reason.

Alreadie six times together had the voice sung this song, ere the Squire would arise to awake his maister, who as yet had heard nothing: but the seauenth time, as the song was halfe finished, or at this place where we haue paused, he well vnderstanding both the words and sence: arose, and awaked the knight that slept, saying. My Lord, I pray yee take your armour, for I imagine you shall finde some aduenture heere, that will incite yee to the combate. As for me, I shall not, because I haue bound your armour so long, as I am wearyed therewith. I pray yee this once stand in my defence, and fight for mee and in my place: because I finde my selfe so spent with choller, by reason of the greefe I conceiue at the Ladyes song which ye heare, that if I should lay hand to my weapon in this rage and agonie: I am afraid I should kill my selfe, which I should be very sorry to doo, not so much for the loue of my selfe, but because if such inconuenience should happen: you should be left all alone, and so haue no body to carrye your armour. Well Geliaste (quoth Gerileon) thou hast reason to be so carefull of me, and I take it in very good part: but what Song is that thou telleſt me of? and wherefore hast thou awaked me? Listen a little my Lord, quoth the Squire, and you shall heare what it is. Then the Knight heard the same voyce which his Squire had doone, continuing the Song in this manner.

But causelesse blame I thee,
fayre loue that stayest my blisse:
Because Phymander feeles like fire,
as in my bosome is.
But cruell, vnkinde fate,
that holdes me seruile so:

Infor-

Infortunate Orphyza, when
will time abridge thy woe?
Seauen yeares aduentures spent,
as bird and beast from me:
Is it not time then now at length,
my braue knight I should see?
The hardie Champion for my sake,
in dreame I did discerne:
Fighting in fire with Polyppe,
my libertie to yearne.

The knight hearing in a place so faire from the company of men, and withall so desert and barren, a humaine voyce singing with such sweetnes and mellodie, as the best singing birdes might cease their notes to listen, and the harpe of Orpheus had beene but rude to the eares of such, as first had heard the heauenly harmonie of this song, was no lesse rauen into admiration, then ouercome with pleasure in the hearing. But when the squire tolde him, that in the beginning of the song, mention was made of the nymph Oziris, he was sodainly prouoked with an extreame desire, to knowe on what occasion the Ladie sung, and who conducted her into that place. So putting on his armour, except his helmet, which he lefte as yet in the hand of the squire, trauersing among the highest trees, he went straight to the place, where he heard the voyce, and there he found a great deepe dungeon, which was round about enuironed with trees, wherevnder he had before seated himselfe, there he beheld a huge hole into the earth, the mouth whereof descended downe into the dungeon, where he saw a Ladie that sometime had bene of exquisite beautie, as yet the feature of her countenance discouered: but the long languishing solitude, which as it seemed, shee had no little while endured, had so extenuated and chafed awaie her perfection, as she seemed nothing in beautie to her former estate. Besides, her garmentes, that whi-

lome gaue her some sourne, being now olde, rent, & torne, made her séeme lesse beautifull than indéede shee was, notwithstanding men of iudgement may easily conceiue, that were she reduced to her wonted plight, shee would appeare more excellent than euer she did. The knight beholding her, began to reason and talke with her, as thus. Faire Ladie, (quoth he) I wish that once more for my sake you would sing the song, which not long since ye did, for you haue a voice so swéete and agréeable, that in hearing yee, I conceined exceeding great pleasure. Or if you thinke me not of such desert, yet at the least doe me the fauour to sing it againe, for the loue of Phynander, him whom you haue so great desire to sée. The Ladie was somewhat abashed when shee heard the knight speake, especially when shee beheld his wonderfull beautie: then came to her memorie, that this was he she had so many times séene in her sleep, combatting against the cruell sauage Polyppe, and of whom she had heard the faire Ozyris speake: whereupon she chaunged sodainly into a vermillion colour, like a fragrant gilleflour, when with a trembling voice she thus aunswered the knight.

If thou art not he that must bee the cause of my deliuerance, I praie thée friendly knight, for the youth and beautie which I beholde in thée, and whereof I haue verie great compassion, staie not héere to listen my singing. For it may so fal out, that if once more thou giuest eare to my song, thou wilt receiue more displeasure, than therein thou tookest delight and contentment. But without further expence of time in questioning wherefore, I pray thée (whileth it is yet permitted thée) to be gone spéedily, and with the greatest diligence thou canst possibly vse, out of this place, assuring thy selfe, that I would not refuse to graunt thy request, as well for the vertue as the beautie which I conceiue to be in thée, as also for the loue of him in whose name thou doest require the same. For thou must knowe for certaine, that if while I sing, the sauage Polyppe ariue héere, he will kill thée though

thou

thou hadst an hundred liues. Therefore I counsell thée as thou louest thy life, to get thée gone from hence as soone as thou canst.

I neuer feared (quoth the knight) the thing I neuer saw, nor whereof I euer heard anie speech, therefore you labour in vaine in perswading me to flight, I rather imagine that you vse these wordes, to excuse your selfe in the request I made vnto you.

The Ladie would haue spoken something more to him, but sodainely came a swift fowle whistling with her wings, and flying hard by where the knight stood, pearched her selfe in one of the highest trées about the dungeon. At the hearing whereof the Ladie was so ouercome with passion and feare, that her tongue stood as fast bounde in her mouth, in such sorte, that shée (not hauing the power to speak anie one worde) was constrained to withdrawe her selfe farther into the denne, tourning her backe towardes the knight. Vppon this accident Gerileon heardé a greate and fearefull voyce, which without customable order, made a meruailous noise, lyke vnto the bellowing of a Bull, when he is strayed from the troupe of kine that he conducteth. Then presently among the bushes entered the cruell and fierce sauage, carrying a dead beefe vppon his shoulder, and in one hand he helde two other deade beefes, intending with this prouision to make his supper. The aspect and forme of him, at the first sight, made the knight somewhat dismayed, for hee was couered all the bodie and face with long shagge haire, as black as a coale, and no manner of white appeared about him but his teeth. The eyes in his head were lyke fire, hee was of a Gyants stature, and right before his nauell he had the head of a dragon, verie hideous and vgly, with a greate mouth, whereout appeared two mightie long hooked teeth, sharply pointed, and verie dangerous. On his necke he bare a great staffe, made in the fourme of a mace, wherewith hee was wont to take and kill both men and beasts of all sortes. So

soone as he espied the knight, he presently layde downe his load, and taking his huge staffe from his shoulder, beganne to laie at the knight: who seeing the vnaccustomed furie of the monster, quickly caught his helmet from his squire Geliaste, which when his maister had, hee ranne to hide himselfe in the hole where he had seene the Ladie. The Sauage leaping to the dungeon, which was as large as it was high, first smote at the knightes head with the staffe, from which to shield himselfe, he turned with such dexteritie and lightnesse, as he was not auite tote hurt thereby. Which the monster perceiuing, redoubled another blowe on the other side so violently, as the knightes shielde was thereby verie much bruised, and his arme stonnied greatly with the stroke. Notwithstanding, he stood firmely against him, and entered into such coler against the monster, that his face and bodie became all red, and his eyes sparkled as fire, so that the sauage who neuer before feared anie man, and imagined that this was but a signe of feare in him, sodainly thought that he beheld the knightes ladie enuironed in a flame of fire, that seemed (as it were) to issue out of him.

This happened not to him of himselfe, but by the succor and aide of his nurse Oziris, who made him appeare in this fearefull resemblance, thereby to weaken the vnconquerable strength of the sauage, against whome the knight so aduanced himselfe, with his brande brandishing swordwise in his hand, and reached in furie such a stroke at him, that had it met with the head of the monster, as it did with his staffe, which was as great as the mast of a shippe, he had rift it in two partes.

But the vnbanted sauage, hauing quickly aduanced his staffe before, was not hurt by the stroke, only his staffe was néere cut in sunder, although it was very hard wood, and beset round about with knagges and knottes, which lifting vp againe, he smote so rigorously vpon the knightes helmet, as it was broken through the middest, Gerileon likewise beeing

ing so astonied, as hee knewe not whether it was daie or night, and staggering therewith, he was readie to fall to the earth, yet he fell not, but recouering fresh courage, smote with his sworde to cut off the monsters head, who espying the blowe comming, ranne fiercely vpon him, and grasping him about the bodie, strome to ouerthrowe him, or by his fast holde to strangle him. Then forcing him to the Dragons head, which naturally was fixed right against his nauell, most cruelly he bit him by the vpper parte of his thighes, his armour for that part not auailing him, but the two crooked teeth entered quite thorowe. The knight felte verie greate paine hereby, and entered into such exceeding fury, when by strong wrastling he had gotten forth of the monsters armes and withdrawing himselfe three or foure paces backe, hee smote fiue or sixe terrible blowes at his bodie, all thicke together, not one tarrying for another. With one of them hee cut off his arme, albeit it was couered with rough and harde haire, which was of great defence for his bodie, but that the knights strength was meruailous and incomparable. By the other blowes the sauage receiued fiue great wounds, as well on his head, as on other partes of his bodie, which inured him more then the losse of his arme, because in steade thereof immediatly sprang forth of the same place a Lyons clawe of meruailous greatnes, so that he felt no defect of the other losse: but the paine of his other woundes made him crie and roare so horribly, that the knight saued from shipwracke, and the marriners in the shippe at the sea side, not knowing what it was trembled with feare, some of them swouning and falling into trances, especially when by this noise they beheld the sea moued with so great a tempest, as the cables that held the anchors were almost broken in the middest, and Gerileon himselfe beeing amazed, yet not that he minded to giue ouer the fight, though immediatly he felt himselfe caught by the shoulders with the Lions clawe, so lately risen vppon the Polyppe, as therewith hee was verie

griuous-

grieuously wounded, euen to the losse of verie much bloud. But being (by meruailous force and vinacitie) gotten once more out of the monsters hold, he doubled many strokes vpon him, slicing the haire and skinne awaie by greate gobbets, notwithstanding the extreame hardnes thereof. And the sauage defended himselfe couragiously, wounding and offending with his clawe and teeth the vertuous nurse child of the faire Ozyris: who in this manner combatted all the rest of the daie, vntill such time as the night being come, the sauage hauing lost great store of his bloud, and with the losse thereof feeling great weakning of his forces, chaunged himselfe from his first forme, into the shape of a huge meruailous roaring lyon, which so soone as hee had giuen the knight to beholde, he fled into the obscure caue, where the Ladie and Geliaste were hidden, whereby Gerileon remayned verie greatly perplexed.

CHAP. 8.

How Gerileon being in great trouble, & feeliug mortall paine of the wounds which he had in combat against the Sauage Polyppe, was succoured by the Nymph Olympia: of the talke likewise they had together. And howe afterwarde hee fought againe with the same monster, hee beeing in the shape of a Lyon, and beeing vanguished by him the second time, was constrained to hide himselfe againe. Whereout may bee gathered, that a vertuous man feeling himselfe iniured and wounded by sinne, being in great griefe and displeasure with himselfe, is euermore succoured by the good Angell that comforts him, so that by such good and speedie remedies, which giueth him courage to resist it manfully,

he

he proceede vntill hee haue altogether vanquished and chased it awaie. By the diuerse mutation of the monster into the forme of cruell beastes, is signified nothing else but sinne, what sundrie shapes so euer it receiueth, yet it is alwaies cruell, onely to trie the consciences of such good men as it assaileth.

When Gerileon sawe that the sauage had changed his shape, and was departed from the combat, he knewe that hee shoulde haue somewhat to doe to vanquish him: and withal hee considered, that if hee could escape this vnexpected danger, he shoulde deserue praise and reputation for euer, which was the greatest guerdon and recompence, that all his aduenturous trauailes aimed at, for which he not at all dreaded the hazard of his life. Thereupon hee determined to abide in that place, yet not in the caue or dungeon, but aboue vnder the trees, where he had rested himselfe the daie before, attending when the Polyppe should come forth againe in his new receiued forme, to finish the combat he had begun: yet hee not knowing the originall or behauiour of the monster, nor for what cause he abode in that place: but in this determination hee went from the caue and layde him downe to rest for that night, vntill the cleere light of a new day should shew it selfe to the world. But it was not possible for him to take anie rest, hauing (as one sayth) three tinglinges in his eare that hindered him. The principall whereof was, the continuall thoughts, whereby he was rauished in contemplati-

on of his Mistresse. The second was his feare of his squire, least he was slaine or outraged by the monster: for he loued him so deerely, as he could not sleepe, vnlesse he were assured that his Squire was as well as himselfe, such was the care he had of him. The third, which was no lesse hurtfull to his body, then these other twaine were to his minde: was the great paine he felt in his thighes and shoulders, by the teeth and clawes of the monster, by meanes whereof all his body became enflamed, by reason of the venim wherewith the nailes and teeth of the Sauage was infected. Heereby he became meruailoustie spent and ouercharged, and euen readie to fall into a mortall feauer: when suddenly he being in this paine, heard the water (which as I tolde yee before enuironed the dungeon) to moone with a great murmure, as if some one had bathed himselfe therein. Hereupon he presently lifted vp himselfe, as it were to knowe the cause thereof, when hee beheld come forth of the riuer the fayre Nimphe Olympia, chamber maide to the Fayrie Ozyris. She hauing oftentimes seene him, was fresh in memorie, and knowne immediatly: when suddenly running to him, embrasing him louingly, she entred into these speeches.

My sweete friend, within these two houres am I come hither, guided by the channels of vnder-ground, from whence these waters ascend to this place: euen from the Pallace of the Nymphe Ozyris thy Nurse, whome I serue and reuerence, shee louing thee extreamly, as well thou knowest. Hither am I come from her to preserue thee, and to tell thee withall, that if thou suffer me not to embalme the wounds on thy body with this precious vnguent, which she expressely commaunded me to bring in this golden bottel thou beholdest in my hand: thou art in very great danger of thy life, so that thou canst hardly escape the death, if thou continue in this estate but till to morow morning. Therfore disdaine not to discouer where thy wounds are, that I may put in execution the commaund of my lady, wherto I dare in

no

no wise be disobedient. I may not (quoth he) faire Olympia, & my friend, refuse the succour of my most deare Oziris, nor of thy selfe likewise, for albeit the necessitie wherin I now am did not incite me to take it, yet the obeisance which I owe both to the one and the other of ye, marie more great to the mistres than to the seruant, commands me to obey all that you can command in a knight. So saying, he discouered his woundes to the Nimphe, who applyed to them the precious ointments in the golden bottell: which was no sooner spread vpon them, but presently he felt no paine at all, and became immediatly as whole and sound, as if he neuer had beene wounded. Hereof was he not a little ioyfull, when imbracing, colling and kissing the Nimphe more then a thousand times, who was in part the cause of so great good to him: he often enquired of the health of her Lady, and the rest of the companie, and cheefely if she had receiued any charge frō her, to tell him what issue the combate should haue which he had begun, whether he should be the conquerer, or himself be brought vnder and vanquished. Enquire not at all gentle knight (answered the nimphe) what shall happen to thée, either in this combat, or any other enterprises, wherein thou art to hazard thy life: for it is not lawful that mortall creatures should know things to come. Only be thou of good courage, and take no greefe of the multitude of trauailes, which thou must proceed in. Let it suffice that I say to thée in generall, howbeit I néd not specifie so much before hand to thée: that thou art destined to vndertake & finish before thou diest many hautie enterprises. And of all them to behold the end, it behoueth thee to endure much, to expose thy self to a thousand thousand dangers and perilous hazards: especially before thou canst know who is thy father, or maist behold the place of thy birth, or what thy cheefest desire is to see: as oft times I haue heard the great princesse of the Fayries, the high & mightie Ozyris my mistres say, to whom it is necessarie that I quickly return, because shee so commanded me.

Therefore I say God be with thee, to whom I recommend thee, desiring him to guarde and preserue thee from all mortall daungers. Hauing so sayd, shee kiss the Knight, and then vanished suddenly before him, he not seeing her, till she came neere the Fountaine, where he beheld her plunge her golden tresses into the siluer waters, wherein to like wise shee diued her whole body, being for this time seene no more, notwithstanding the manifolde intreaties for returne that the knight made: whereby he continued all the night so displeased, that he could entertaine no thought of rest, but when the vermillion blush of day breake began to showe his red locks, and disperse his splendour ouer the earth: hee put on his Armour againe, and went before the Caue, to attend the Polyppes comming to the combate, whereout if hee would showe himselfe this day: yet hee intended to speake with the Lady he saw the day before, to enquire of her the cause of this aduenture, as also for his Squire, for whose losse (which he imagined vnrecouerable) hee remained full of greefe and sorrow. Long had he not stayed there, before the Polyppe came forth, in the shape he had taken the night before, which was like a mightie huge Lion, fierce, rauenous, and very fearfull to behold, farre differing from the natural beasts of the same kinde, which ordinarily are not so great, hideous, and monstrous in view: which had terrified the Knight with feare, but that hee remembred the last woordes of the Nymphe Olympia, and as they began to quicken his memorie, so they made him become more hardie, fierce and terrible, then the Lion himselfe, who comming chasing forth of his den to run vpon him, seeing him stand with such resolued hardinesse: minded once to returne againe into his Caue. But the fire of his rage was so violent, for loosing the combate the day before, as his heate could conteyne no gouernement, but that in all furie hee would flie vpon him: and snatching at him, stroue to teare away his shield that hung about his neck, and with such vi-

gour

gour did he catch hold thereon, as he brake the arme braces of strong brasse, and the buckles of steele wherewith it was fastened, in doing whereof, he well neere had ouerthrowne him in the place: had not the worthie knight (more braue then the Lion himselfe) reached such a blow at his head, as but it was quicklie defended, hee had beene cleft therewith to the shoulders. But the sturdie brast, who the day before had made proofe of such like weightie strokes: let goe his hold, to make a step backward from the blowe. Euen as a mallicious enraged dogge, seeing a wastring man with an yron piked staffe, passing before a doore in a village where he lay sleeping, without any noyse or barking, runneth suddenly vpon him, tearing with his teeth the flesh from one of his leggas, wherewith the man being agrieued, turneth the yron poynt of his staffe to strike and kill him, which the dog fearing, giueth back, and turning againe vpon the man, enforceth himselfe to runne againe vpon him, to get a greater morsell from him: and he still standing vppon his guarde, threatnes the yron pointe more dangerouslie to the teeth of the Mastie, who perseuering still in his rage, constraines forth himselfe still to giue him more woundes, yet being constrayned to flie, no lesse chafed then he was at the first, returneth vanquished into his kennell: and the man ouertranailed in this strife, feeling and seeing himselfe wounded and bleeding, to rest himselfe, is likewise enforced to go lay him downe in an other place. In like sort, this fyerce and inhumaine monster, having left his fyrst holde, fearing to be smitten with the brandished sword the knight helde in his hand, with the point whereof he menaced fatall death: keeping himselfe of the whole length of the sword, turned againe, watching where he might fasten his renting pawes and enuenomed teeth, without endangering himselfe: but the weapon being so neere him, eyther to loppe off a legge, or else to slice his head from his shoulders, as he perceiued how well the knight could handle his sworde: yet raising

himselfe into rage and choller more then before, pressetb on himselfe nearer and nearer, to throwe a violent blowe on the braue warriour, which (notwithstanding all his subtiltie) could not hurt him. For hee beheld the weapon aloft, wherewith the knight verily thought to spoyle the Sauage: but the blow missing the aymed intent, falling to the earth, entred more then halfe the length of the sworde thereinto, which he being vnable presently to recouer, was left destitute againe. On which aduantage, the cruell beast got opportunitie to close againe with him, and getting hold about the midst of his bodie, he held him so stronglie with his dangerous clawes, as with woonderfull force they pierced through the mayle of his haubergeon and his armour, euen to the tearing of his flesh: whereby hee felt such exceeding anguish, as he was ready to sinck downe, for the black blood came forth in foure or fiue places, where the clawes were entred euen to the entrailes: which the knight to well feeling and perceiuing, considered, that if he applyed not his verie vttermost deuoirs, quicklie to recouer himselfe out of this holde, and lost any iot of courage in this extreame need, the losse of life likewise would immediatly follow.

Heereupon, he smote fiue or six strokes with the pommell of his sworde on the Lyons head, for otherwise hee could not reach at him: and with such woonderfull puissance were these blowes deliuered, as he brake the scull of his head, and made his two most hurtfull teeth fall out of his mouth, the blood likewise gushing foorth in great aboundance. When the Lyon felt himselfe so grieuously wounded, fearing least woorse should befall him: endeuoured all he could to auoide taking and getting farre off from the knight, forbare to turne againe as he did ere he came to these assaults: whereby Gerileon felt himselfe much eased, for the beast pressed him in such sort, as hee was well neere sweltred and out of breath. Thus continuing still the combate in extremetie of furie, the rest of the day was spent, when the Lyon at one

stroake thinking to finish the combate: let drive a very dangerous blowe at the knight, who foreseeing his mallicious rage, carefully regarded least hee should abide any more gripes, and therewithall deliuered him such a stroke on the crest: as he was compelled to stagger backward, yet not to give ouer the fight, when lifting vp one of his pawes, hee thought therewith to rent away the knights helmet: which Gerileon perceiuing, preuented him with such a sound salutation, as made him fall to the ground very weightily: then redoubling an other couragious stroke vpon his head, cleft it in the middest, the one halfe whereof (with the right cheeke and braines) fell to the earth. At this instant the Lion changed his shape againe into the likenesse of a Beare, that halfe breathlesse and ouerspent with trauayle, fled into the Caue againe, and there hid himselfe.

The knight well contented to pause awhile, went from the Den, and returned to the place where he might rest all night, and there finding the Golden bottell, wherein the Nimphe Olympia brought the pretious vnguents, and healed such woundes as he received the day before: hee tooke and opened it, and applying the same againe to his hurts: in lesse then halfe an houre they were soundly healed. So feeling no anguish or paine at all, saue onely that his bodie was wearied very much: being ouercharged with sleepe, he layde him downe and closed his eyes, where two whole houres he tooke quiet rest, and there will we leaue him, to finish this Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. 9.

How the cruell Polyppe came againe the third time to assaile the Knight, who was greatly agrieued that the Polyppe waked before him in the morning, Howe afterwarde hee entered combat with him again, hauing vowed not to rest or sleepe, till he had vtterly vanquished & put him to death. What was the end of their combat, and what perplexitie (after the fight finished) the noble Gerileon remained in. From which things may be gathered, what labour a good and vertuous man endureth to conquere sinne, when hee beholdeth the frailtie of his owne nature, that would make him sleepe in faire resolutions and deliberations, thereby to cause him loose the victorie which was before promised him. Then what trouble and busye care hee hath to ouercome such a horrible monster, that is prouided with sundrie sortes of force & defence, to violence the most couragious and hardiest that shall withstand him. Afterward is shewen what strength and efficacie is in the oath of well minded man, and that it ought not to be broken for any accident whatsoeuer that may happen.

Tolde ye before, when the Polyppe first came to the caue, and when first hee met with our inuincible knight, that a fowle flutterd thether somewhat before, or euen in the same instant was there pearched vpon a tree, from whence as yet shee not remoued, but both while the combat

endure

endured and afterward, still she sate vppon one braunche of the tree, to behold all that should passe betwéen the two combattants, desirous in her selfe that the fight should soone be ended, and that the knight should be the conquerer, for causes wherewith yee shall be better acquainted hereafter.

Now about two houres after the knight had begunne to sléepe, the Polyppe (more furious in his new shape of a beare then before) came forth of his darke den, where he reposed himselfe awhile, now to finish the combate so long since begun: determining to die himselfe, or else vtterly to exterminate the knights daies, for whom he fought very seriously, both within the Caue and euery where without. The Bird beholding all this, and fearing least the monster should méet with the knight, he would kill him in his sléepe, as hee certeinly intended: flew right downe where Gerileon slept, and with her béake and winges so smote at him, that hee awaked, and rising vp take his Helmet, looking euery where about him, to see who had so rudely waked him from sleepe. But no where could he perceiue the doer of this deed, only he heard the Polyppe turmoiling and rauing on each side, séeking where he was, yet could not finde him, braying with a very hideous and fearefull noyse: whereby he coniectured, that hee was waked by some other then humaine prouidence, to end the combate begun, & now perceiuing he had slept ouer long, he began to chide himselfe in this manner. Vnhappie that I am, to sleepe so long in this place, where I rather ought continually to haue had mine eyes waking, considering the enterprise I haue taken in hand, whereof now (it may be) I shall neuer sée the end. Am I not most indiscreet and badly aduised, to haue so little care of my selfe, as heere to sleepe soundly, without dreading the danger and hazard of death, where I haue opposed both my life and honor, for safetie of which I ought to watch continually? Certeinly I confesse, & very well I know it, that I little deserue to make profession of armes, to end such doubtful and peril-

CHAP. 9.

How the cruell Polyppe came againe the third time to assaile the Knight, who was greatly agrieued that the Polyppe waked before him in the morning, Howe afterwarde hee entered combat with him againe, hauing vowed not to rest or sleepe, till he had vtterly vanquished & put him to death. What was the end of their combat, and what perplexitie (after the fight finished) the noble Gerileon remained in. From which things may be gathered, what labour a good and vertuous man endureth to conquere sinne, when hee beholdeth the frailtie of his owne nature, that would make him sleepe in faire resolutions and deliberations, thereby to cause him loose the victorie which was before promised him. Then what trouble and busye care hee hath to ouercome such a horrible monster, that is prouided with sundrie sortes of force & defence, to violence the most couragious and hardiest that shall withstand him. Afterward is shewen what strength and efficacie is in the oath of well minded man, and that it ought not to be broken for any accident whatsoeuer that may happen.

Tolde ye before, when the Polyppe first came to the caue, and when first hee met with our inuincible knight, that a foule fluttered thether somewhat before, or euen in the same instant was there pearched vpon a tree, from whence as yet she not remoued, but both while the combat endured,

endured and afterward, still she sate vppon one braunche of the tree, to behold all that should passe between the two combattants, desirous in her selfe that the fight should soone be ended, and that the knight should be the conquerer, for causes wherewith yee shall be better acquainted hereafter.

Now about two houres after the Knight had begunne to sleepe, the Polyppe (more furious in his new shape of a beare then before) came forth of his darke den, where he reposed himselfe awhile, now to finish the combate so long since begun: determining to die himselfe, or else vtterly to exterminate the knights daies, for whom he fought very seriously, both within the Caue and euery where without. The Bird beholding all this, and fearing least the monster should meet with the knight, he would kill him in his sleepe, as hee certeinly intended: flew right downe where Gerileon slept, and with her beake and winges so smote at him, that hee awaked, and rising vp take his Helmet, looking euery where about him, to see who had so rudely waked him from sleepe. But no where could he perceiue the dwer of this deed, only he heard the Polyppe turmoiling and rauing on each side, seeking where he was, yet could not finde him, braying with a very hideous and fearefull noyse: whereby he coniectured, that hee was waked by some other then humaine prouidence, to end the combate begun, & now perceiuing he had slept ouer long, he began to chide himselfe in this manner. Vnhappie that I am, to sleepe so long in this place, where I rather ought continually to haue had mine eyes waking, considering the enterprise I haue taken in hand, whereof now (it may be) I shall neuer see the end. Am I not most indiscreet and badly aduised, to haue so little care of my selfe, as heere to sleepe soundly, without dreading the danger and hazard of death, where I haue opposed both my life and honor, for safetie of which I ought to watch continually: Certeinly I confesse, & very well I know it, that I little deserue to make profession of armes, to end such doubtful and peril-

lous attempts, as dayly I endeuour my selfe to meet withall: seeing hauing now found them, I make so slender account of them: as I aduentured to sleepe, when honorable deuoire bids me wake and do my dutie. High time then is it for me, by meruailous diligence, and chiualrie, such as beseemeth a man of vertue and account, to amend this fault: whereon I sweare, that I will neuer sleepe or take any rest, till I haue slaine this mutable and inconstant monster, that disguiseth and changeth himselfe into so many shapes, to deceiue and deprive me of life by an ouer long lingering combate. Hauing thus spoken to himselfe, he lightly stept aloft to the large den, wherein was the lothsome kennell of the sauage, whom he found in such manner and forme as already I haue told ye: to wit, in the likenesse of a Beare, exceeding meruailous in greatnesse to behold, yea, more then I dare report vnto yee. For in his head, in stead of two eyes, you would haue layd were two burning torches, and you would haue imagined when he opened his mouth, that there ye beheld fire & flaming brands, when his teeth shewed like glowing red fire hookes, and were of such greatnesse withall, as he could not containe them within his mouth, but were seene out on each side the length of more then halfe a foote. All his body was couered ouer with very long hayre, vnlike such as other beares haue, his clawes were great and sharpe, & his skin was of such proofe, as it could not be pierced thorow to the flesh, as the knight well perceiued at the very first stroke, which hee deliuered at him so soone as he came to the Caue, & with such force did it fall vpon his shoulder, as the sworde hauing sliced away a great quantitie of the hard harsh haire: hee might see it fall on the ground, but no hurt at all was done to the flesh. For the weapon grated vpon the skin, as the noise of a file vpon hard mettall, when it breaketh through the place where it enters: notwithstanding, the monster felt some paine hereby, for he was no sooner smitten, but he braied aloud so horribly, as he was heard

more

more then ten miles from the place. This could not withhold him from running on the knight, against whom he so bestirred himselfe, as he fastened his two feete about his necke so rudely: as the knight had no meane to hurt him, or defend himselfe. Then with his teeth he would haue bitten him by the throat, in which place if he had wounded him, he had bin dead though he had an hundred liues. But the knight foreséeing the danger well enough, got the shéeld from his shoulder right before him, where against the monster could not any iot preuaile, because he could fasten no hold thereon, so the knight stood wholy couered therewith. Now strine they to throw one another down, whē Gerileons strength against the Polyppe was to small purpose, such was his wonderfull and vnmeasurable power: on the contrary, the monster so roughly shoke the knight, as if he had not had more agilitie and skill, then force, at the very first offer he had bin cast: but he vsed such nimblenes and sleights, in succouring that part where he was most in danger, and containing himselfe still firmely on his féete: as the beast thus contended with him more then an houre, and yet could get no other aduantage. In the end hauing incessantly tormented himself in this maner so long time, he (for al this) made him measure his length on the earth, euen as the mightie huge Pine trée, long laboured with the forcible strokes and cuts of the Carpenters axe is in the end compelled to fall, and with his fall, leaues the marke of his goodly branches imprinted on the groūd where he lies, by the noise wherof all the beasts in the forrest wher it is hewen down, stand quaking and trembling with feare. Euen so the valourous knight, making a fearfull thundring with his armour, fell so weightily on the earth, as the marke of his armes, his helmet, braces, & print of his shoulders, remained engrauen on the ground, he being also sore astonied with the fal. The beast that wonderfully laboured for this aduantage, vnable to containe himselfe on his legs, fel also vpon him very fiercely: yet the knight was not so lost

in his sences, but that he take speciall guarde, how thus lying on his back, he might bestowe some hurtfull wound vpon the monster, and thrusting fiercely at the armes and legs of the beast, hee made him glad to leape from him hastily, in which leap taking vnaduised heed, he fell with such weight vppon his owne head, as he became in a traunce with the fall. This gaue the knight libertie to recouer foting againe when aduauncing himselfe to this sauage disguised Beare, he gaue him so many strokes with the sharpe keene edge of his sword: that a great part of his body seemed to be shorne in like sort, as when a cittizen is barbed or polled by a yong apprentise Barber, vnskilfull in his occupation, his head appeared circled, notcht, and very euill fauouredly handled: but when he saw no little gutter of blood was drawn from him he grew into exceeding choller, when presently he beheld the beast come vpon him with wide open mouth, to get hold of him by some mortall morsell: for since the receiuing of this new shape, he had not yet receiued any great harme, which made him run likewise at the monster with the sword point and seeking to pierce it in at his mouth, by entring further into his body or head, deuised how to take away his life frõ him: but herein he was deceiued, for the monster seeing the sharp weapon in his mouth, held it with his teeth more hard then the steele it selfe, in such sort, that if the knight who (fearing what might ensue) had not quickly recouered it thence, he had broken it in many peeces. But he rather intended to suffer the monster to take hold on him againe, then to lose his weapon and be a naked man, wherof if once he were deprived, hee then knew that he could not escape with life. The beast hauing thus fast seazed on him, wounded him with his teeth so cruelly on the right arme, as he well pierced quite thorow: wherby the knight felt such pain, as if his arme had bin pierced with hot yrons, such was the venim of the monsters teeth: this anguish prouoking Gerileon to anger, made him thrust violently with his sword at the belly of ye beare,

but

but it was as hard as the rest on his bodie, notwithstanding he still laboured that place with thrust vpon thrust, till hée had the skinne there so soft and tender, as at last the sword passed in a great waie. Now began the sauage to be so mad and fierce, as snatching at the sword which was in his belly with his téeth, brake it in the midst, and then getting forth of the knights power, toke his former shape of the sauage againe, and ranne to hide himselfe in his denne, as before hée was wont to doo, when he thought himselfe to be deprived of life, leauing nothing in the knights hande with the péece of his sworde, the breaking whereof didnot a little grieue him. Neuertheles being so couragious and magnanimious as possible a man could be, he cheered vp his spirites, hoping that night (which alreadie was come vpon him) to imagine some meane whereby he might victoriously escape the danger, for otherwise hee had no care of sauing his life, vnlesse he might haue thence with him the honor of conquering the monster. And such confidence had hee in his valour to performe this, as all fearefull doubts were now vtterly abandoned, and so he went from the caue, to the place where hee was accustomed to take his rest the nightes before: where being set downe, he opened himself to view such wounds as he had receiued in this last conflict, and applied to them the precious ointments that were brought him by the Nymph Olympia, whereof there was now remained verie little in the golden bottell, which made him thus resolue, no more to hazard the combat without death or victory, because he wel perceiued, that to returne wounded from the fight, was but to bring the dart of death with him, being without hope of helpe, in that he receiued no wound on his bodie but it was mortall, and which (without the vnguents sent him by Oziris) had presently bene his death. Being in this determination ready to lie downe on the grées grasse, which was embrodered with many beautifull flowers, he remembred that before hee entered the last battell with the monster, hée

had swoone not to sleepe or take anie rest vntill hee had put the sauage to death, or else himselfe to die in the triall, and so farre herein he considered with himselfe, as thus hee began to parle with himselfe. Thou hast vowed not to sleep or receiue anie iot of rest, vntil thou hast slain this monstrous Polyppe, or thine owne life to perishe in aduenturing the combat. But vnhappie man thou canst not doe it, and thy vowe so carelessie made in choler, ought not so constrain thee but that (necessitie so requiring) thou repose thy selfe, in regard of such danger as hereafter may ensue: which being other then thou art able to coniecture of, thou maist lawfullie excuse thy selfe, and by good reason take thy rest, without standing on thine oath, thou abide in anie offence of conscience. For it is sayd, that a thing spoken in choler and vnaduisedly, remaineth without effect: because till the humour be past, he hath no perseuerance to knowe what he sayd. In like sort if I binde my selfe by oath to doe a thing impossible for humane power, mine oath yeelds it selfe as vaine and vnprofitable, because of the vncertaintie of future euents and successiue affaires: in which case to be quit of mine oth, it ought not suffice that I haue done my endeuour, and all possible I coulde to doe what I haue vowed, albeit for the greate difficultie of the thing swoone, I farre differed from compassing it in such sort as I tooke mine oath. But howe now? quoth he sodainely, why seeke I reasons to excuse a matter swoone, where there is none to be admitted? I haue vowed to God, then can it not bee that mine oath is vaine: for breaking of such an oath, is a thing that verie weightyly chargeth the conscience, and God is the onelie punisher of so great and greeuous an offence. For before I swore, I might verie heedfullie and aduisedly regard what I doe, and the fault committed by folliie is as punishable as that done by aduise, in that all faultes are committed willinglie and by knowledge: in that God hath giuen reason to man, to take heed that he in no wise offend, so that a man not vsing

ſing reaſon in the beginning of his actions, wrought his own knowledge. Moreouer, I haue ſworne voluntarily, without the compulſion of anie one to cauſe mee ſweare, ſeeing then I began thus willinglie, it followes of neceſſitie that I kep mine oath inuiolable, without any breach whatſoeuer hereafter. Nor ought I ſeeke anie cauils whereby to excuſe my ſelfe, for none at all is to be allowed, in that a man of vertue making profeſſion of honour and armes, ought to keepe his vowed faith, with all other matters belonging to his oath, euen ſo dearely as his proper life: leſſe then which wee ought not to eſteeme our conſcience and our honour, both which in me I ſhould account greatlie iniured, if I ſhoulde not die rather (a thing not impoſſible) or vanquiſh and put to death this monſter before I ſleepe, according as I haue vowed: it behoones me then not to ſleepe tyll I haue done the deede.

Reaſoning thus a long time within himſelfe, hee began to thinke howe in the mean while he ſhould weare the time awaie, and thinking tr goe to the firſt place of reſt, to ſeeke the ſwoord of his ſquier and companion, he changed quickly that minde, in that the ſauage might begin iu the meane ſpace: beſide, he was vncertayne whether the Ships ſtaiod all this whyle at the place where he lefte them, and if they were gone, what then might enſue to fruſtrate their hope. Nor was hee certaine lykewyſe, in ſo darke a nyght to finde the waie that brought him thether, ſo ſtraying hee knew not whether, it would be long ere he returned again, and ſo ſhuld looſe the commoditie of gaining ſo great fame, as was the victorie to come of this monſtrous ſauage, and which moſt of all grieued him, hee had no reaſon to forſake Geliaſte his faithful ſquier. Then comparing theſe reaſons with others, he thought it ouer-much boldnes to ſtaie there, thinking with hands and nails ſo ſoft and tender, to combat with a beaſt ſo cruel, waiting to do that without his ſwoord which when it was whyle and ſharp he could not compaſſe.

Then

Then came another opinion into his head, to lais a greate deale of wood on the mouth of the caue, and putting fire ther to, so smoother the sauage therein. But seeing hee wanted fire, and yet if hee had it, by this meanes the Ladie shoulde likewise die that he heard sing so sweetly: hee forsooke that conceit, imagining a new deuise, that the den of the Sauage had many nookes and corners in it, where happily Gelaste and the ladie were, in some place not knowen to the Polyppe. For heretofore hee had seene the caues of vnder-ground belonging to the Gyants Ferclaste and his brethren, & therefore he entended to cut with his sword great braunches of trees neere adioyning, and therewith to stopp the mouth of the caue, that the monster shoulde receiue no breathing in, but so should die stifeled. So thinking this last determination to be the best, he sodainly arose to performe his intent. What happened to him you may reade in this discourse following.

CHAP. 8.

Howe Gerileon resolued to trie againe the combat against the Sauage Polyppe, for the vanquishing of whome (after hee had deuoutly praied vnto God) he determined to get a great staffe, and to fashion it in forme agreeable for the combat: wherwith (after a harde and daungerous conflict) hee killed the monster, for which he rendered thankes to God. And howe afterwarde the Ladie Orphyza and the young Gentleman Phynander met and ioyed together, thanking Gerileon for their deliuerance, & of the conference they had together. Whence may be gathered, that a man loving and fearing God,

putting

putting all his confidence in him: is in the end so inspired, that beeing assisted with his grace, he vanquisheth sinne, wherewith he hath long time been assaulted and tormented. From which such as receiue any fruite, taking it well in worth, and thanking him with humilitie: they attaine more contentment thereby, then if they had gained all the treasure and riches in the world.

GErileon being thus determined, to giue an end to his last resolution, remembred that when hee parted from the stately Fairie Ozyris, aboue all things she recommended to him the loue and feare of God, saying to him: that if hee had recourse to him in his aduersities, and with a good and cheerefull courage, did implore his assistance: he would neuer faile him, but euermore (according to his accustomed kindnesse) would shewe himselfe readie to helpe, not permitting him to tarrie long time oppressed. And sundry times before this vertuous Lady had taught him this faire lesson, which nowe in extremitie the Knight well remembred: whereof lifting his eyes on high, bowing his knees with great humilitie, and holding his two hands knit together, vp toward Heauen, where, with great admiration hee contemplated the disorder well ordered of the Moone, the Starres, the working powers, and generallie of the celestiall bodies, according as his eyes were capable of this sight: hee began to bee ratisfied in contemplation, and made his prayer to Almightie God in this manner.

The Praier of Gerileon before his last combat with the Polyppe.

Almightie God, whose power is infinite and incomprehensible, seeing thou hast created and appointed man on the earth to honour thy diuinitie, and extoll thy might, which so much the more proceedeth from thée, as thou makest men admirable in greatnesse, in knowledge, in wisdome, in fortitude, and all other effectuall vertues, which thou raineſt downe on them with thy right hand in greate abundance: making some more wise than strong, others strong and lesse prouided of wit and knowledge, others (as a principall worke wrought by thy powerfull hand) wise & valiant, prudent and strong together. And according to the gettings of a couetous merchant, that counteth his debtes with booties, vseth places for each accordingly, so beeing of of great value, and others of little, euen so hast thou ordayned, some more high, others in a place of more lowe and inferiour degrée, yet all neuertheleſſe contented with their roomes, exalt thy Godhead, and render thankes for the good they haue receiued from thy bountifull hand. In like manner (by thy goodnes) eache thing is maintained according to his place, with such prouidence, as no one ought receue discontentment, or hath occasion to be agrieued, but to laud and glorifie thy high name. Ought not I then that am but a little colde earth, yeld thée thankes, for that thou hast appointed me in this world, to bee in some degrée among humane creatures, yea among such as thou hast ordained to fight against monsters, which the enemy of nature nourisheth and maintaineth to afflict poore creatures, and heereby to bee among the number of those, whom thy almighty power hath

yéelded

yéelded most admirable, a thing which I knowe in my selfe to proceede from thy only might & bountie. I yeld thée thankes then O my God with all my heart, for the good I haue receued from thy largesse, and intreate thée in all affection, that continuing in me the giftes of thy liberalitie, it will please to regard me in this mine enterprise with thy eie of pittie, and suffer me not to fall therin with shame and dishonour, but displaying thy grace in me, thou wilt inspire mee with thy goodnes, and make mine eies to beholde the beames of thy holy spirite, cleerly to know and discerne the meane and waie, whereby I ought to do such things as are pleasing to thee: among which, if the combate that I haue begun may be numbred, vouchsafe that I may by some meanes return and escape with victory, being assured that without thy help all my strength is vaine and vnprofitable. Heare then Lord with gracious eares, and listen to the praier of thy afflicted seruant, that craues it in humilitie of heart, and giue beside what thou knowest more expedient for him than himselfe doth, and which the weake cogitations of man are not worthie to know.

With these words he made an end of his praier, & beeing risen vp, he went with the piece of the sword that remained in his hand and lopped diuerse branches from the trées, and especiallie he cut an oake, containing in compasse the bignes of a mans thigh, euen of the best membred man that might be found. This oake was straight and full of knots round about, which taking in one of his hands, he cut away the little branches or shrigs, that grew on each side: and when he had shaped it according to his minde, it came into his head, that with this staffe he should attempt to vanquish the Polyppe by mightie downe right strokes, being perswaded to accomplish and performe with this staffe, what hee could not doe with his weapon. In this determination hee continued fashioning it in ample fourme for the purpose, sharpening the knottes on euerie side, that as occasion

serued, hee might the better preuaile with his blowes: the point likewise thereof made hee so piercing, as easilie the monster should not scape both strokes and thrusts. After he had thus busied himselfe an indifferent while, hee beheld faire Aurora come dauncing with the mornings garland in her hand, which made him not a little ioyfull, in that he had assured hope to bring his purpose to passe: such was his confidence in God, from whose fauour onely he expected an answere of this hope. Whereupon immediatlie he armed himself, and taking his staffe, went to looke if the Polyppe were come againe to the place, where the dayes past they had continued their fight. Now came forth the monster more terrible and furious to behold, then at any time before, being armed with a huge strong buckler of yron, which he held in one hand, and a sharpe slicing Cimetarie in the other, by the keene edge and pointe whereof, this day hee was promised victorie certainelie.

The knight also this day shewed him selfe, and appeared more meruaylous and fearefull to the Sauage monster, then euer he did before: for looking on him, ye would haue thought, that as the Sunne when hee goeth to rest in the longest Summer dayes, is inuironed with Vermillion beames round about: euen so braue and beautifull seemed our Champion, and presenting himselfe readie to the combate, he thus spake to the Sauage.

Thou hast (enemie to nature) long made resistance against my force and strength, and by thy most strange disguisings hast alreadie three times escaped the daunger of of thy life: but nowe (such is my trust in Almightie God, by whose inspiration and power I haue chosen a newe weapon to ouercome and destroye thee withall) thou shalt escape me no more, but shalt now end thy dayes with vtter confusion.

The Sauage monster as he was about to answer, shewed him the Buckler and the Swoorde, which he lifted on

high,

high, and in so doing, he brayed and cryed, so that it seemed by his cryes, that he made the earth to tremble vnder his feete, that hee menaced the knight so to murder him with his Cimetarie, and with the assistance of his buckler to performe what he had sayd. Hauing thus spoken in his language, he deliuered a meruaylous stroke at the knight with his cimetarie, who by his dexteritie escaped both the stroke and death likewise, whereof he had beene certainly assured, if the blowe had falne vpon him, but being started aside, he would now make proofe if hee could do any thing with his staffe against the Sauage, and thereupon smote at him so lustily, as if he had not quickly animated his buckler before (which he held with one hand, though it was so weightie, as two men of this time could hardly stir it from the ground) doubtlesse the stroke had bin his death: but he couered himselfe so well from the blowe, as hee had no harme, but his hand stonnied a little, whereat he being exceedingly angrie, redoubled with his Cimetarie such a stroke on the knights sheeld, as cutting of a great part therof, it fell to the ground, very hardly escaping the arme that held it, but no more harme or offence happened as yet. On the other side, the knight lifting vp his staffe with both his hands, hauing throwne backe his broken shield vpon his shoulder, intending eyther to end his life or the combate: and albeit the Polyppe stood vnder guarde of his buckler, yet he receiued such a violent stroke: as made him fall downe astonished, not knowing where he was, and as hee sought to rise againe, the couragious knight bestowed such an other greeting on on him, as he could not recouer foting, so beauly fell the staffe vppon his stomach. Gerileon seeing him lie thus along, and weening the latest extremitie was come, ranne vppon him, to wrest the Cimetarie out of his hand, therewith to cut his throat, or otherwise kill him: but the Sauage who was not yet so vnprouided of strength, caught him so roughlie by the arme, as made him likewise fall to the ground:

when eche recouering himself, a great many violent blows were dealt betweene them, as it would haue required a verie sound iudgement, to know whether side should haue the victorie. But in the end Gerileon, being highly offended the combate endured so long, within him called vppon God verie deuoutlie, desiring him to strengthen his present stroke: and then lifting his staffe with meruaylous hardinesse, the blow fell so peisantly on the monsters buckler, as made him amazedly turne three or foure times about, during which time he redoubled such an other stroke vpon him, as broke the back-bone of him in sunder, with all the ioynts of his neck, the bloud streaming from forth his mouth in great aboundance, likewise out of his eyes, eares and nose, so that with the losse of this bloud, hee lost life and all together, though he might discerne as he lay vomitting, how with inraged anger he bit the ground, and the effusion of his bloud made a great lake in that place. Nor can I compare his fall but to the like noyse of a huge pine tree, that beeing ouerthrowne by the vnmercifull blasts of winde, cast downe from the top of an high mountaine, falleth to the bottome with meruaylous noyse, breaking and renting his small braunches on each side, as all the inhabitants neere adioyning, remaine astonished and affrighted verie fearefully.

Thus dyed the infernall monster, by the vertue and patience of this braue knight onely, who did more in this exploit, then the puissant king of Siria euer did in former time, with the assemblie of all forces and conquering armies, which hee only brought thether for the taking or destruction of this monster.

Being ioyfull of this gratious victorie, he felt no payne or labour of this combate, albeit he was bathed all in sweat, through vexation of long delay in the fight: like a woman after the hard trauaile of child-bearing, forgetteth the anguish of that bitter brunt, seeing her infant well brought into the world: for then such is her ioy, as she remembers

no more the passed stormes. So with great humilitie and deuotion Gerileon gaue thankes to God, from whome hee knew proceeded this worthie worke of victorie, acknowledging that hee was but the minister or instrument, by whome GOD shewed the effects of his almightie prouidence.

Soone after he had thus giuen thankes, the Ladye that sung the Song which yee heard before, came forth of the Den where the Polyppe was wont to hide himselfe: she being pale, wanne, and trembling with feare, came and fel on both her knees at the knights feet, and embrasing his legs fast in her folded armes, she thus spake.

Most noble and vertuous knight, as euer was borne in this world, extracted and issued of high, princely, and generous linage: happy be the houre of thy arriuall in this countrey, blessed were the pappes that gaue so fayre a creature nourishment, and the mother that bare thee in her wombe, likewise the ship wherein thou saylest to this coast, neuer may it perish, but with safetie passe into euery place, free from vexation of stormes or tempests. Longer mayst thou liue then the father of Amphilocus and Thrasimede, the strength and vigour of thine armes neuer feeling any weakning, but by the glory and honor of this blessed dayes victorie, to all posteritie may they make thee more famous, and after death reuiue perpetually the renowme of thy valour. May each season by thy meanes taste the flourishing verdure and sweetnesse of an euerlasting spring time, seeing by thy heroycall vertues I am this day deliuered from moste miserable bondage and seruitude, wherein poore desolate Princesse that I am, I haue beene to long a time detained. Thinke and consider vertuous knight I intreat thee, wherein my wretched selfe may doo thee any seruice. My father hath great store of riches and treasure, besides more store of welthie and honorable friends: to whom if it may please yee to beare me company, I am assured for this my deliue-

rance

raunce, he will returne such recompence, as ye shall haue no cause to be discontented.

Ladie (answered Gerileon) riches and treasure are no such recompence as my trauailes do expect, neither did desire of any such matter incite me to knightly deeds, following the execution of dangerous exploits of Armes: but an earnest affection to do good, and bringing to passe such things as are pleasing in the sight of God: as is shortning the liues of the wicked, that ordinarily commit a thousand cruelties, displeasing to his maiestie. Nor am I ignorant, that among men of honor and vertue, I shall beare away more account and fame by the effects of this affection, then should I bee possessed of massie heapes of riches, the greedie desire wherof (oftentimes) prouoketh men rather to do euill then good. And this is my assurance, that thus I shall obtaine more easilie the fauour of the better sort, and no other guerdon doe I require, eyther of you or your father: if the pleasure I haue doone ye, in deliuering ye from this monsters captiuitie, may merit any recompence at all on my behalfe. But I repute the deed to bee of so slender valew, in regard of your deserts, as for all my labour bestowed, I require no other thing of yee: but that ye would tell me the first effects of this aduenture, and especially of whence ye are, how and wherfore ye haue beene thus deteyned by this monster, also why ye sung the Song before the beginning of our combates: perswading your selfe, that with this onely courtesie I shall holde my selfe sufficiently requited.

If I should (most vertuous knight, answered the Ladie) recount from the beginning to the end, the whole Historie and progresse of all my misfortunes: three times would the sunne and moone make their course about the world, before my discourse were ended, and so yee might thereby receiue more discontent then pleasure. But for your sake, I am content to reueale what you desire to know, and when my tale shall growe yrkesome and offensiue to ye, then will

I end if so ye please to commaund mee. As the Lady proceeded in this kinde of language, the knight (who held her by the right hand) espyed her cheekes suddenly died with a Vermillion blush surpassing the Rose, whereby her beautie which was nothing lesse inferiour thereto, receiued more splendour then before it did, when the monster with feare still dismaied her heart, and this inward dismay, greatly altered and changed her beautifull complexion, making her looke pale, wanne, and coullerlesse. Now began Gerileon greatly to meruaile hereat, and withall stood as amazed, when he beheld the vnloked for companie of a young Gentleman so neere him, fayre and of good grace, who had procured this lowely change in the Lady: nor did he take it a-nie iote displeasantly, though with a smiling and debonnarie countenance, the young Gentleman approached neere to touche her, saluting her with a sweet kisse, humble reuerence, and kinde embrace, expressing his inward affection and godwill, which immediatlie was pursued with amiable and gentle speech to Gerileon, full of gratulations and thankfull courtesies, as well for his deliuerance, as the Ladyes there present, whereto when the knight had kindly replyed, as he was not to learne his court-ship, the Gentleman ran and embraced the Lady in such sorte, as they are wont to doo, that haue been long time without the sight and company of such as they extreamely loue and affect: and she likewise, as finding no small ease heereby to her amourous flames, so strictly bound the Gentleman in the circle of her armes, ouercome with loue and intire affection, as if he had not had more discretion then the Lady, fearing least Gerileon would be offended at these ceremoniall actions of loue: I thinke they would neuer haue sundered till the worlds end: but he shewing a bashfull countenance for these amourous behauiours, (which neuertheless were performed modestly and comely) winding himselfe (though loth) from the anchorholde of his ioye, brake forth in these speeches to the

Ladie. Sweet Mistresse, I heard that you made a promise to this knight, to whome both you and I remaine so highlie beholding, as you ought not delay any longer time, but to reveale what ye have promised: above all things be so good as your word, and obey whatsoever he shall please to commaund yee: being assured that hee will command no other thing, then what shall be agreeing with honor and honestie.

My good Lord and frend, answered the Lady, I doubt not but this worthie knight will pardon me, if I be a little forgetfull of my dutie towarde him: considering the sight of you ravished my part with such ioy, that if ever he knew to love, and what his conquering passions are: he will rather referre the fault to his power, then to any disgrace or discourtesie on my behalfe committed.

At these words Gerileon sighed and changed couller, feeling to kindle againe within him by this new touch or remembrance, the lively amourous flames which not long since tooke beginning in his youthfull brest: and so much the more they encreased in him, as hee strove to cover and dissemble the same, which the Ladie and yong Gentleman well enough perceived, albeit they made no shewe thereof, fearing to displease him to whom they were so greatly indebted.

In this time Geliaste came forth of the Cave, quaking and trembling, which made the knight so glad (fearing hee was dead) as he forgot some part of his late remembrance: for next to his Ladie, hee intirely loved his Squire, and would not lose him for any thing in the world. His comming causing pleasure and content to them all, they went further from the Cave, and laye downe in the shade under a great goodly Tree: where sitting very kindly together, the Lady began her discourse, in forme and manner as ye shall read in the Chapter following.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Orphisa recounteth the whole progresse of her aduenture to the Knight *Gerileon*, how the King *Diegonde* of Lusitania (after long triall of his fortune) hauing espoused the Princesse of Spaine, named *Pollyda*, and hauing no issue by her: she beguiled him with one of her fayrest Damosels, called *Olympia*, of whom he begat the fayre *Orphisa*, who was carryed away by the Sauage *Polyppe*, and afterward deliuered as yee haue heard. Whereby we may note, how variable fortune is in this world, and how after she hath (by her inconstancie) ouertrauayled such as are vnder the guarde of their good Angell: in the end they escape with pleasure and contentment, more easily after they are brought to the porte of so many euils, then if they had neuer beene tossed in those pittilesse and dangerous stormes.

THe skilfull Ladie Orphisa, began then to recounte her aduenture to the Fayrie Knight, in this manner. You must vnderstand sir Knight, that I am daughter to the wise and vertuous king of Lusitania, a man, by reason of his prudence and valour, sufficiently knowne to all the world, as hauing done many things worthie of memorie, the fame whereof is bruted euery where. He being named Diegonde, was in his younger yeares a most accomplished knight, euen in the time of king Dorino, father to the king of Spaine at this instant reigning, who had a daughter in yeares mariageable, called Pollyda. This Ladie, besides her excellencie of beautie, could cunningly twist, spin & sowe, as is most proper to women, likewise she was well instructed in good letters and the liberall Artes: in such sort, as she was able to disgrace the most wise and studious Philosophers

of those times, so subtillie could shee dispute of matters depending in Morrall and Naturall Philosophie concerning her selfe.

By reason hereof shee became so proud and audacious, as shee imagined no man then liuing in the world, was worthie to ioyne with her in mariage, and therefore despised all: so that there was no one (how worthie so euer) that durst enterprise to demaund the question, no, not the great King of England, who in those dayes was the most fayre and accomplished knight in the world, and highly loued of King Dorino, because of his valour. But the King my Father, who was become amorous of her, would put it in aduenture, either to gaine her in marriage, or be altogether refused. And in this resolution hee wente to the king of Spaines Court, where within short time after his arriuall, the Daughter hauing heard the cause of his comming thither, gaue him to vnderstand by one of her Pages: that he could win nothing but losse of time, by seeking to ioyne in marriage with her, and therefore he should do much better, to imploy his purpose about other occasions. Hereat although the king my father was extreamly offended, yet left he not for all that to pursue the cause, and made his request to the king of Spaine (who would not marrie her against her will) with such importunitie: as in the end the Father and the daughter were constrained to graunt the pretended marriage, yet vnder this condition. That eight dayes before the nuptials, my Father should be bound to hold open Iouste a whole day together, against all knights that should present themselues at this generall tourney, which expresse-lie was there appointed for honour of that day: and if hee were vnhorsed by any knight, hee should desist from his importunate suite and request of mariage. But if fortune smiled so fauourablie on him, as that he went away conqueror in this enterprise: then eight dayes afterward, the desired mariage should be accomplished.

My father, who was caryed away with ouer hot and furious heat of marrying this faire and skilfull Pollyda, accounting no danger to be in the enterprise, willingly yeelded to the mariage, vnder the condition proposed: although he knew right well, that those times afforded great number of most hardie and braue knights, that knew how to behaue themselues in the Iouſt, and could dismount ſuch as carryed better eſteeme then themselues. But amongſt all, and beyond all the reſt, was reckoned as moſt ſtrong and valiant in each point of chiualrie, the young knight Floridamant, ſonne to the great king Brandiſmell of England, and him onely my Father doubted, as ſundry times before hee acquainted me withall. Weighing then aduiſedly the valour of this young knight, he began ſomewhat to diſpayre of the iſſue of his attempt, and as in this thought he ſtood penſiue and troubled, he concluded to put in practiſe, what heretofore was ſayd by the great Lacedemonian Admirall Lyſander, to wit: that where the Lyons ſkinne fell out to ſhort to peece it out with the Foxes caſe: minding to vſe induſtrie and cunning in theſe aſſayres, where hee thought ſtrength and manhood might happen to fayle, hauing to deale with ſuch mightie and puiſſant aduerſaries.

In this determination, vnderſtanding that the great king Belligande of Gaule had a Launce, the yron poynte whereof was ſo inchanted, as all ſuch as were touched therwith ſhould bee diſmounted: eyther by ſleight or force hee reſolued to be poſſeſſed thereof, imagining which of theſe meanes were lykeſt to ſpeed, and to aduenture both rather then fayle of his intent.

To bring about this ſtratageme, he went with all ſpeed into the realme of Gaule, where being, hee heard that in a Forreſt appertayning to that kingdome, dwelt a certaine man, which termed himſelfe a knight, but commonly hee was called the cunning Théefe: and ſo ſubtill was hee in robbing, as nothing could eſcape his fingering, and all his

attempts were so artificially compassed, as such as had lost any thing, or were otherwise robbed, presently the blame of their losse was imputed to him: he likewise seeing each one esteeme him such a famous theefe, and so admire his sleights and policies, tooke great pleasure therein, and oftentimes would sit solemnly smiling thereat.

To this man the king my father forthwith trauailed, and promised him very large summes of money, if he could rob the king of this enchaunted Launce, which he so safelie kept in his Cabinet, as it was thought impossible to get it thence. The cause why hee held it with such vigilant care, was for the loue of a fayrie named Oziris, who thereof had made a present to him: hoping withall hereafter to leaue it to a sonne of his, which as yet was but a very yong infant. Notwithstanding the great difficultie consisting in this business: yet in respect of the large summe of money, the theefe promised to deliuer this Launce into my fathers hand, as he did the day after my father had this conference with him, but first he thus bespake him. Knight, quoth he to the king my father (in that hee had no other knowledge of him) it is necessarie, if yee would haue this Launce, that to morrow you goe with me to the great Cittie of Poictiers, where the king of Gaule at this present maketh his abode, and where hee is determined to holde a generall tourney, because as to morrow is the day, when he wan the victorie against the Giant Perceuall, who had long time before greatly trauayled and molested him with warre. I will stay for ye neere the place where the Torney is to bee kept, and you shall go to the king, telling him that I am the Knight Lorgolio, Cosen to the Giant Perceuall, whom hee slew by treason: wherefore I am come to defie him in combate man to man, to reuenge the death of the Giant my Cosen: with which reuenge I should thinke my selfe satisfied, might I but breake a couple of Launces with himselfe, no other in his defence to offer me iniurie: beside, hee shall not streng-

then

then himselfe with his enchaunted Launce, whereby my Cosen receiued his death, and for better assurance hereof, he shall deliuer that Launce into your hand to keepe while we Iouſt, which I am assured he will not refuse to do: thus may you depart, and beare away the Launce with yee: but if this deuise should faile vs, assure your selfe that quickly we will finde another: for I will receiue no money of yee, before yée haue this Launce so much desired, in your possession.

My father liked well of this councell, and (to make short) it came to passe euen as the theefe had before deuised: for the king of Gaule hearing the defiance, and weening that all my father tolde was true, made no doubte of giuing the Launce into his hand, and my father being possessed thereof while the king of Gaule went to put on better Armour: both he and the cunning theefe departed, so that none could tell what was become of them. The king and all his Court (at the first tidings hereof) was greatly abashed, but vnderstanding soone after the cause of this theft, and who was the inuenter of this pollicie: it was made but a merrie iest of. In the end (notwithstanding) this pleasure did not so con-continue, but this fine theefe, fearing to be taken, was glad to flye from the kingdome of Gaule, and passed thence into England, where afterwarde hee liued and remained a long time.

As for the king my father, he returned againe by Sea to Lisbone, and from thence to Saragossa, where the king Dorino then held Courte, where beeing arriued, he behaued himselfe so well with this stie gotten Launce, as all the knights that Iouſted against him, yea, euen the braue knight Floridament, were foyled and dismounted to the ground: whereat the Princesse Pollydai (who bare no loue at all to the king my father) beeing greatly displeased, would haue refused the mariage before agreed vppon by the king Dorino: saying that for her parte, shee had giuen no consent,

and

and without the Brides consent, hardly can any mariage be accorded, especially with such a one to whome shee could not vse any affection.

Whereat the king my father being highly offended, in furie flunge forth of the Spanish kings court, giuing him many hard tauntes and iniurious speeches, for the disloyaltie that he sayd remained in him. On the other side, the king was full of rage and anger against the infant his daughter, whom he ceased not dayly to perswade, that shee should like well of marrying with king Diegonde of Lusitauia, least his credit and reputation should be condemned, in vsing trecherie and perfidie to so great a Prince. So what thorow loue and pleasing speeches, as also force and frowning countenances, in the end she yeelded to his wyll. But this was after the Lady had had conference with a noble and excellent Fayrie, named Ozyris, who had beene greatly helping in her birth, endowing her with manifolde vertues and riches of spirit, for which she was not a little commended: and after the decease of her mother, Sister to king Barachen of Scotland, she had sometime nourished her in her rich inuinsible palace, which was in the realme of great Brittaine, and euer afterward shee perswaded her, that she should not marie with any liuing man, which was the cause shee helde so aloofe from this aforesaid marriage.

After she had well schooled her concerning this matter, the noble and vertuous Fayrie sayd, that in respect children by the diuine lawe) ought obedience to theyr parents, and it was her fathers will she should match with the king Diegonde, who alreadie had doone so much for her loue, and was euen readie to despaire if he fayled thereof: shee counselled her not to withstand her fathers appointment. And although in former time she had diswaded her from mariage, it was because she discerned by her skill, that such issue as discended from her in mariage (if shee fortuned to haue

any(

any) should haue hard hap, and prooue very vnfortunate, which would be such greefe both to her husband, as the greater part of their youth would bee spent in greefe and pensiuenesse. Notwithstanding, if this marriage must needes be accomplished, she promised to vse the matter in such sort, as by this coniunction she should neuer haue child. And so found she meanes to comfort them sufficiently, as heerafter yee shall vnderstand the manner how, without iniurie to the beautiful Pollydon: but my father (by himselfe and his) should feele the euill and misfortune, whereto yet she promised a day of finall conclusion.

The Princely maide giuing credit to hir prophetically speeches, was greatly comforted and satisfied, and so resolued to marie with the king my father: after which determination once knowne, soone was hee sent for by the King Dorino, when with great pleasure and content to euery one, he espoused Pollyda, with her he liued more then twentie yeares, yet could he haue no issue by her, which so greeued him, confounding his thoughts with sadnes and melancholly, as the most part of the time he eat his bread in mone and teares: for I imagine it a meruaylous hart breake to a man that desires to liue after his death, and perpetuate his memorie by his children: to see his mariage consumed without any generation, that might make mention of him when he is dead. And such (heerefore) was his intire conceit of greefe, as oftentimes he meant to repudiate his Queene Pollyda: but such againe was the woonderous loue he bare her, fearing to offend God, and displease king Dorino her father: as hee was still diswaded when such thoughts entred his fantasie. All this likewise the Queene very well noted, and notwithstanding her former despisings, yet after her marriage she loued him exceedingly, pittying his greefe, but shaddowing her owne so much as possibly she could, seeking by all meanes to remedie both, as in the end she did, by the aduise and counsell of the wise Ozyris, who euery daye

and in all places assisted her, perswading her to doe as followeth. One of her wayting Damosels, whome my father vsed good countenance towards, because she was of perfect beautie, being named Olympia, daughter to the Duchesse of Terciede, a chaste and prudent dame: with her the Fayrie aduised the Queene, that my father should haue dalliance. She following this councell, one night when the king my father sent word to haue her company in bed: so cunninglie handled the matter, that this damosell lay there insteed of her, for the maide was likewise secretly amourous of the king, which was the cause, that (being where she would be) she disliked not this sweet and pleasant deceit, but without any shew of displeasure, shee gladly endured the kings pastime with her, seeing the Queene was so well content to afford her her place and priuiledge. To such effect grew my fathers labours, who little thought he was thus beguiled: as the Maide was conceiued with childe: when afterward the Queene comming to sleepe with the King, sayd that she felt her selfe conceiued, answerable to his so long desire, for which good fortune hee should applaude the heauens, from whence proceeded so great good to her. Hereof was the king my father glad, thinking the Queene had tolde the trueth indeed, as within short while after, he minded to goe on pilgrimage, to pray at the holy Sepulcher of Iesus Christ, and returning thence, to visit Saint Iames in Galicia, at each place to thanke God for this fortunate euent.

Beeing thus resolued, one day hee secretly departed in disguised garments (feigning some other excuse) to accomplish his intended voyage, in which time (beeing the space almost of a whole yeare) it chaunced that the fayre Olympia was deliuered of me, to the great content and pleasure of Queene Pollyda, who nine moneths together feigned her selfe with childe, though but meere dissimulation: and vsing the Damosels deliuerance as her owne, gaue generally to be knowne by some of her fauourites and moste familiar

Ladies,

Ladies, that this long expected fruite had issued from her owne bodie. And to the end this mysterie might not be discouered, the wise Ozyris tooke to her inuisible Fairie house or Pallace, the faire Olympia my mother, where euer after she continued of selfe same nature as her other nimphes and faires, among whom at this present she is most beloued, as I certainly knowe by such reuelations that her selfe hath showne me. Now the king my father being ignorant of all these things, was so glad when he returned from his voyage to see me growne to a prittie porte or stature, and that the Queene was not sicklie or felt such paynes as other do after their deliuerie: as all his care now was for my education and instruction, not onely in curious weauing and sowing, but also of good letters, especiallie poesie and musique, perceiuing my voyce apt and proper for singing.

Herein likewise did the Queenes care agree with his, and so dearely did shee loue me, as if I had beene indeed a braunche of her owne bodie: for neuer wente shee to any place, but still I must accompany her, through which continuall association, it happened one day among the rest, that she would needes ride on hunting, a pastime wherein she tooke exceeding pleasure. I being with her, the hounds egerly pursuing the graue, and she chasing that things fadged not according to her minde, roade so fast that wee had some lost one another.

The space of a whole day almost, remained I thus alone in this meruaylous great forrest, wearyed and spent with seeking to finde my company againe, till at length by good happe I came to a fayre and cleare fountaine, from whence streamed forth a swift gliding riuer, that made his course quite thorow the forrest: where alighting from my horse, to rest and refresh my selfe on the soft tender hearbes that grewe about the banckes of the fountaine, I had not long sitten there in this sorte, but the fayre Olympia my mother appeared in sight unto mee in the habit of a Nimphe,

at whose sudden sight I was greatly amazed. But with her sweet and gratious language, she deliuered my heart from feare and dismaying, recounting to me (as in a dainty compiled historie) the whole discourse of my birth, in manner and forme as you haue heard, albeit somewhat more at large.

Moreouer she told me, how the mightie and skilfull Fayrie Ozyris her Mistresse, had disclosed to her, that by the craft and meanes of an old abhominable Necromancian, named Charonyfer, should bee nourished a cruell and hideous monster called the Polyppe, whose crueltie and puissance should be doubted and feared ouer the whole earth. This beast, to iniurie both her and me, should one day steale me from my parents and friends, to keepe me in extreame miserie and thraldome, vntill the best knight in the world, nourished and brought vp by this Fayrie as her owne childe, albeit extracted originallie from the best, puissant and most vertuous king aliue: should trauaile to the place of my imprisonment, and there by his prowesse and valiancie (killing the monster) deliuer me out of captiuitie.

Beside this, shee tolde mee, that during the last seauen yeares of my detayning and miserie, a young noble man, brother to Queene Pollyda, to hinder the monster from killing me, should follow me to the place where I was imprisonned, and there each day for six yeares space, changing into as many sundrie formes as the monster, should combatt with him for my libertie: yet all his endeuours would prouue in vaine, because the monster was onely to be slaine by the knight of the Fayrie Ozyris. And to let me know when the last yeere of my miserie should ensue, she said, that from the beginning thereof, the noble man (who loued mee with perfect loue) should be changed into a Foule or Bird of straunge sort, in which shape dayly would hee come to visit and see me, euen vntill the Polyppe were slaine, when hee should receiue his manly shape againe, and the day of the

Polyppes

Polyppes death, should bee the finall extermination of my miserie.

After she had imparted to me all these things, she threw forth such a perfume of Poppie vppon me, as (from the end of her discourse) I slept so soundly by the Fountaines side, that I neyther sawe or heard when shee departed: and as some while I continued in this sleepe, Queene Pollyda not a little displeased for my losse, hauing with her traine sought thorow the forrest, came at last and found me where I slept, when gently awaking me, wee thence departed againe into the Cittie.

Within a while after, it chanced, that by the aduise of the king my father, and his Queene Pollyda, I was sent to king Dorino my imagined Grand-father, who desired to haue me neere him, because he verely thought me to be his daughters childe, by reason whereof he wunderouslie loued me. Hauing continued certaine yeares in his Court, this young Prince heere present, named Phinander, youngest sonne to king Dorino, and brother to king Dorian, that at this day gouernes ouer the Spaniards, beeing equall in yeares with me, taking me for so neere in kindered to him: spent the time of his infancie with me, and I in like sorte with him.

Among these pastimes and sportes of children, it happened that we became amourous of ech other, and that in such manner, as we could not endure long without each others sight: which loue each one imagined to growe by naturall affection, that so neere kinne doe customablie beare one to another, and the young Prince verily perswaded himselfe, that the iouissance of our loue might not bee compassed, because of the prohibition of Christian lawes, concerning mariage betweene so neere kindred as we seemed to be. Hereupon, seeing him one day very sad and pensiue, being alone in the Garden, I faithfully discouered to him the manner of my birth, according as my sweete mother Olympia before

had tolde me: which highly comforted him, causing both in him and me farre greater affecton to each other, if more might be then was commenced before. Our passions were still worne out with honest sollace and pleasure, expecting that the long delay of time should minister more intire delight of our loues, according to the honest desire abiding in eyther of vs: but both our hope and desire were suddenly squandered, by a new and strange accident that immediatly followed.

Knowe then gentle Sir, that the daye when the Prince Dorian, eldest sonne to the king of Spaine, brought to his fathers court the fayre princesse Amarylla, daughter to the King of Gaule, whome hee had newly espoused, there was speech of nothing else but ioye and sollace: in middest of which pleasure, this wicked monster which you haue slaine, entered the great hall of the Pallace with a most horrible noyse and crie, which made the Ladyes in such affright, as each one fled for safetie of themselues, yea, though there were present many braue and hardie knights, yet beeing vnarmed, and thereby not fit to vse resistance, some ranne with speed to get on theyr armour, and others to saue themselues from death. By this meanes the Polyppe had leisure to make choyse of mee, among all the other Ladyes of the courte, and after he had caught me fast in his armes, without any stay, he ran ouer the land and sea, what of his owne nature, and by the enchauntments of that cursed Magitian, who gaue wings to his course: that in short time (astonnied and nere hand dead with feare) he brought me to this place, where euer since I haue remained in greefe and torments, liuing the most part of this dolefull season, with raw flesh, and other viands, sometime good, sometime bad, such as the monster did eat himselfe: but to speake truth, since his first taking me, he neuer made semblance of any wrong to mee: but from day to day I saw how his rigour encreased, and if he had fayled of his pray, or could not get it so conueniently

ently as he would, I iudged that my selfe at last should haue serued to slake his hunger. But at the beginning, my deere mother Olympia so assisted me, and from time to time gaue me so good councell: as (by many slight subtilties and inuentions) I appeased his anger toward me, euen vntill this prince arriued heere: for yee must note withall, that from the first day of my surprising, as I haue beene assured by my mother, and since by him, that hee ceased not to followe the monster, and to enquire the place of his abode, when (after long and painfull trauaile) he found it: and one day when the monster was abroad, hee aduentured to come sée and speake with me, when I aduised him, as I did you, to bee gon, least hee should chance to be taken or slaine by the Polyppe. He giuing credit to my words, went to the king of this country, who is the king of Assiria, a meruailous mightie, courteous, and debonnarie knight, to whome making himselfe knowne, and my misfortune: the good king (that diuers times had layd ambushes for this monster, because hee had ruined and wasted all this countrey, yet by no meanes could be slaine or taken) caused an assembly of most part of the best knights of his Courte, intending to assayle this deuill, and deliuer me from my miserie: but such slender successe tooke this attempt, as in one day (by force and illusion of his manifold shapes) he slew more then thrée hundred of them: and if the king had longer continued his pursuite, himselfe had likewise perished. Wherefore with this losse hee left off, and would no more enterprise my deliuerance, whereat this prince conceiued such vnkindnes, as in teares and greefe he went to a forrest, which is six or seauen leagues distant from this place, where weeping and lamenting day and night, continually he called for death to end his affliction. Then appeared to him, the powerful and wise Osyris, who comforted him with future hope of my release, albeit it would be long before, euen seauen whole yeres: during which time, ý he might liue safe (els had he no hope of con-

continuance) she changed him into the forme of a wylde and sauage beast, giuing him power likewise to alter himselfe into so many shapes as the Polyppe changed: sauing at his last fight he should receiue the nature of a Byrd, and could no more attaine the forme of a foure footed beast, but might varie into sundrie shapes of Birdes.

The Prince being thus transformed, came euery day six yeeres together to combate with the Polyppe, without vanquishing or beeing vanquished, though all the day they would not rest from theyr trauaile, but fought most furiouslie, euen to the beginning of the seauenth yeere, when he changed into the likenesse of Foule as you beheld him: for this is the Bird that flutterd on the Tree at your arriuall, who since the Polyppe was slaine by your vertue, hath now recouered his former humaine shape: and for him sung I the song you heard at your first comming, which in that maner I composed in mine owne language. Thus haue you heard sir knight the whole estate of my aduenture, what yet remaineth, yee may be satisfied in by mee: so tooke the Ladyes tale an end, and therewith will I likewise ende this Chapter.

CHAP. 12.

How the Ladie Orphisa hauing ended the discourse of her aduenture, there came into the place before Gerileon and the Prince Phinander, a knight cruelly wounded, trayled on the ground by his horse: who intreated Gerileon to assist him, in reuenge of the wrong the puissant Adylas had doone him. And how after hee had heard of the ciuill warre in Persia, since the departure of the great Sophie, hee tooke leaue to depart from the Prince Phinander,

and

and the faire Orphisa, and howe Gerileon healed the knights wounds.

THe Historie saith, that after the Lady had thus ended her discourse: the fayre Knight, who made no little maruayle of the aduenture, thus answered. Ladie, right glad am I that I haue slaine the monster, which offred ye so much wrong and iniurie, for some other occasion, that made me so earnest in desire to combate with him, to wit, desire of acquiring honor and renowme, for which knights valiant doe often put they r liues in ieopardie: besides, because in performance heereof, I haue done something pleasing to the noble dame Ozyris, towards whom I am, and by whom onely I hold my life: if then for the loue of her, and fayre Olympia your mother, well knowne to me, and who in these combates hath greatly succoured mee, likewise for the loone of this prince heere present, and vertue abiding in your selfe: if I can do any other seruice profitable and pleasing to yee, I would make spare of no trauaile whatsoeuer, so I might accomplish any thing to your contentment. And were I not bound by a solemne vow neuer to take rest, till I haue found a knight whom I seeke, which constraines me God knowes how farre in his search, to reuenge the death of my friend slaine by him: I assure yee, that gladly would I accompany yee to the Courts of your father, the king of Lusitania, where neuertheleſse one day (by Gods helpe) I hope to see ye, with more ease and ioy then I haue at this instant, but thither shall this worthie Lord keepe ye good and loyall companie.

As Gerileon spake these words, and further would haue proceeded, his purpose was preuented by the sudden course of a goodly horse, that trayled along a Knight well neere

dead, hanging by one foote in the stirrop, and holding a Launce in his hand: but the Fayrie knight catching the horse by the bridle, tooke of the knights Helmet, where he found a very dangerous wound in his head, then getting his foote forth of the stirrop, perceiuing some life yet remained in him, and that hee was not but in an amazed traunce: with the helpe of the prince Phynander and the Ladie Orphisa he was recouered againe. Beeing come to himselfe, he knew well the place where hee was, which made him thus speake to Gerileon. For Gods sake sir knight help vs, and let vs quickly get vs hence, for heere dwels the most cruell and inhumaine monster of the world, who as yet (I hope) hath not seene vs, therefore I aduise ye presently to be gon: as for my selfe, I had rather bee dead then tarry in a place so daungerous as this is. Feare not the monster you speake of (quoth the Fayrie knight) for if hee that hath thus shrewdly dealt with you, had had no more power then the monster at this instant hat, you should be more healthfull and in better disposition then ye are.

I see well (sayd the wounded knight) that you haue not heard the inexpugnall force of the Sauage Polyppe, for if ye had once experimented it: yee would forbeare to talke of him, and tary in this place lesse while then yee doe. I know more of him then you doe, quoth the fayrie knight, for you know nothing but by heare say: and that which I knowe is by experience, the mistresse of vertue, and true discouerer of all things. And to let yee see that I speake not by hart, I will giue ye some instance. Then taking the knight by the hand, he shewed him the Sauage monster dead, which when he beheld, hee trembled as full of feare and astonishment, as if he knew not whether this were a dreame or a certainte: and beholding well Gerillions countenance, sayd. Sir knight, haue you then keene one that helpe this monster to his death: surely I beleeue, that since you had the stomack to come so neere, in vsing courage against him while hee

ued, and are one of the braue armie that hath discomfited him: you dare as boldly doo something for the Christians, and I iudge if yee be a Christian, and such a one as I imagine ye to be, you will not refuse to reuenge the shame and outrage that hath beene offered me. Beleeue me Sir, quoth the Fayrie knight, I am a true Christian, and to any, bee they Persians, Arabians, Syrians or Assirians, I would giue succour according to my power and their necessitie: wherefore I pray ye tell me, in what affaires haue the Christians need to vse my helps, and who hath thus vnmanlie outraged yee: to the end I may assuredly giue them assistance, and also do my endeuour to auenge your wrong, tell me the trueth, without any further feare of the monster, concerning both the one and other, Sir answered the knight herein will I gladly satisfie yee, but because I haue verie much to discouer, if I should recount each necessarie pointe therto belonging, that ye may the more briefely vnderstand these high affaires: I wil shorten the discourse conueniently as I may, reueling nothing but the very principal matters.

Know then sir that I am a knight, my native countrey is the kingdome of Persia, neere to the great cittie of Tauris, and not long since was I sent in company of twelue other knights, with the strong & puissant Ariodant, a knight of great reputation, neere cosen to the mightie Mutiuell king of Persia, who was elected and chosen by the greater part of the inhabitants of that countrey (to goe to the great Emperour of Constantinople, to intreate his succour for a multitude of good knights and christian souldiours, whom the young prince Mauspasian, brother to the great Sophie of Persia, very straitlye besieged in the cities of Susa and Tauris, beside diuers other places of the Persians kingdome. And to the end ye may know wherefore we went, ye must note, that (some while since) the great Sophie, a man worthie of great dignity, for the high prowes wherewith he is indued, hauing sente a portrait curiously drawn, of the faire princes

of Constantinople, daughter to the Emperour: became so carryed away with the loue of this most beautifull Ladie, as he immediatly resolued to make her his wife, what hazard or aduenture so euer stood thereon. And to compasse the same, he sent ambassadours to the Emperour, to demaund her in marriage, but the Emperour at that time made refusall, because hee was contrary to him in religion, and it was not lawfull for a Christian to marrie with a Pagan, neither for a Christian to ioyne in any conuersation with a heathen. Which was the cause (to take away this difficultie, which onely seemed to hinder the mariage) that the great Sophie of Persia with all his people would become Christians, and should be baptized. And because the popular sort should frame their actions, and fashion their manners answerable to their king: himselfe was the first that receiued holy baptisme, and commanded in all the countries of his kingdome, that the Christian law should be anounced and preached. Which being doone according to his will and commaund, many willingly receiued the faith and religion: others finding the alteration very strange, withdrew themselues in displeasure: some other that would not at all receiue it, but were constrained thereto, thought better to forsake their houses, lands and possessions, to liue in another kingdome with libertie of conscience, and so continue the rest of their liues in the Pagan law. After these things were thus ordered, it chanced that the king absented himselfe, so that no one could tell what was become of him: some sayd, that as in former times hee had beene accustomed, so now (like a knight errant) he was gon in search of strange and perilous aduentures, with especiall intent to make proofe and combate body to body, with the puissant Nabot and Squamell, who were counted the most hardie knights in the world. Others sayd, that being transported with this amourous passion, hee was gon to the Emperour of Constantinople, to demaund of him the Princesse his daughter:

for

for if he found her to be of such perfect beautie, as the Painter by his art had discouered, surely by force or fayre means he intended to haue her. But which way so euer hee tooke, very true it is, that soone after his departure, the Prince Mauspasian his brother, whom hee had left to gouerne the Realme in his absence, would by force of armes compell such as had abiured the pagan lawe, and were become christians: to take againe their former religion, saying, that what the king his brother had doone and intended to doo, was but onely to induce the Christian Empetour, with more ease to graunt the marriage of the princesse his daughter. And because there was no likelyhood by that meane to obtaine her, by force he minded (after his returne) to haue the Lady, and this Mauspasian said that the Sophie had disclosed to him. But all would not giue credit to his speeches, for many resisted to doo as he commanded, thus voging the contrary: that seeing they found the Christian religion good and profitable to their consciences, as also the saluation of their soules, seeing likewise their king had caused them to vndertake that religion and beléfe, and since had giuen them no commaund to the contrary: the present Gouernour (being but a deputie) ought not constraine them to forgoe the religion, but the same king might do it when he should be present. Beside, what once he had so freely granted and established, could not so suddenly displease him, to the preiudice of his people, for as they did owe loyaltie and fidelitie to their prince, by submission which they voluntarilie made to his power: so are all princes bound againe toward their people, to guarde, defend and keepe them by his power, and to entertaine them vnder the obedience and assurance of conuentions, made betweene them and the lawes of the land.

Vpon this debate rose many perticuler quarrels and partialities, betwéene such as had auouched Christiantie, and them that continued idolaters to their false Gods, who ha-

uing chosen the Prince Mauspasian for their head and gouernour: withdrew themselues to their houses, and forcible would deprive them (of the other part) of their houses and possessions, whereby is nowe growne in Persia a ciuill warre, the most straunge and cruell that euer was. For betweene the inhabitants of an selfe same kingdome, hath alreadie beene seene sundry bloodie battels, where on each side are slaine many Christians and Pagans, especially two most signall and markable persons: one on the coast of Tyrisir, where the Christians by the prowesse and valiancie of the braue knight Ariodant, wun the day, and braue the Infidels in disorder: the other neere the cittie of Tauris, where the Pagans had ioyned with their forces the ayde of the Medes, Syrians, Assirians, and Arabes, compelled the christians to flye the field, with great losse of their men, to make themselues strong in the citties of Tauris, Susa, and diuers other townes beside, where they are at this instant begirt with very sharpe siedge. So despairing of their former trust in God, the valiant prince Ariodant, determined secretlie to leaue the cittie of Tauris, where hee was Generall of the Christians, accompanyed onely with twelue chosen knights (among whom I was one) to go require ayde of the Emperour of Constantinople against the Pagans, with promise to subiect to the Christian Empire, all the whole Monarchie of Persia. As we were on the way to effect our voyage, by ill hap we met (about a league hence) a troupe of Pagans, consisting of about three hundred men, all well appointed, and knights of marke, who hauing pitched their pauillions in a medowe that butted harde vppon our way: we quickly were descryed vnto them, and knowing by our Ensignes, as also the badge of the crosse (which all of vs bare open in our armes) that we were Christians: they cryed aloud, that we should passe no further, without speaking to their prince and conduter, who was the puissant king of Thuris, named Adylas, and was there in a very fayre large

pauil-

lion, minding to vnderstand what we were, that hee might make further enquiry of the Persian warre. Now albeit this rude summons was greeuous to vs, yet we durst not refuse to go speake with the king Adylas, perswading our selues, that although he was a Pagan, yet would he be no enemie to vs, as wee were aduertised a yare before, beeing in quest of his cousen germaine the king of Phez, one of the hardyest knights in the world. He questioned with vs concerning the affayres of Persia, wherein the prince Ariodant truly answered him, as also both what hee and wee were, with the present occasion of our iourney: wherevpon hee would arrest and detayne vs as prisoners, a thing very vrkesome to vs, and which we were not able to endure, but more gladly would loose our liues, then see our selues captiue in our enemies hands, and subiected to their wils. Heerevpon wee fell to our best endeuour, that our foes might get no aduantage of vs, and in such sorte did wee defend our selues, that twentie of them were layd dead on the ground, before any of vs suffayned any iote of harme. Which when the king Adylas perceiued, immediatly hee put himselfe in armes, and hauing assembled all his people, assayled vs so fiercely, that six or seauen of my companions were slaine outright, the other taken prisoners, and my selfe escaped in such plight as you now beholde mee, but the prince Ariodant I hope is fled likewise.

Thus heare yee (sir Knight) the estate of my misfortune, for releefe wherein, and to reuenge my iniurie receiued, I desire that wee might haue one bought more with them, assuring yee for certaintie, that whatsoeuer my harme already is, yet could I imploye and bestirre my selfe afresh: but I see wee shall be so feeble, that all our courage will bee but friuolous and vayne, and accounted as cowardise.

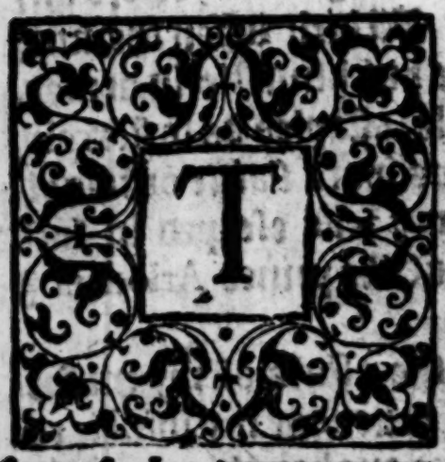
The wounded Knight hauing thus spoken, presently fell into a swoune, which greatly greeued Gerileon, who did

his

his best to helpe him: and hauing ransacked his golden bottle, wherein the Nimphe Olympia brought him the precious vngents, that healed his woundes receiued from the Polyppe: he got out a little, which he applied to the knights wound, when some after hee felt himselfe of more able disposition, and this beeing doone, how they resolued, yee shall read heereafter.

CHAP. 13.

Of the aduentures that happened to the knights Gerileon and Taffinor, and how after they had slaine Argontes, and ten or twelue of the best Knights in the hoste of Adylas: Gerileon went and tooke the king himselfe, and of the conference they had together.



The daye after the Persian knight had recounted all his aduenture to Gerileon, according as ye haue read in the former Chapter: they departed from the Polyppes Den, to goe combate with Adylas and his people, and albeit imminent death stood before theyr eyes, yet could nothing withdrawe them from such a daungerous enterprise, as not the intreats of Phynander and the fayre Orphisa, who by many meanes laboured to diswade them to the contrary. For the Fayrie knight euermore resolued, not for dread of death to let slip any opportunitie, when he might combate or performe any generous act, whence might growe fame and reputation, the onely wadges for a man of valour and vertue. And as for the Persian knight, it was such despight to him to bee ban-

vanquished: that as a man halfe desperate, an hundred times he wished the fatall death, so he might in any sort reuenge the shame and iniurie doone him, then feare of death was no matter for him to stand vpon. In this enflamed desire, taking their leaue of Phynander and Orphisa, (who were verye pensiue for Gerileons departure, both mounted on the horsse of Taffinor, for so was the Persian knights name, hauing betweene them but one Launce, which Gerileon bare that sate in the saddle: in this sort they rode away, and not farre had they trauayled, but they met an other horse (readie sadled, the bridle lying vppon his neck) softly pacing in the field they rode thorow. Taffinor immediatly knew the horsse, and that one of his companions had beene mounted thereon, who beeing slaine by Adylas his souldiours, ran now ranging from place to place. Taffinor lightly leaping from behinde Gerileon, made such shift that he tooke the horsse, and getting quicklye vp into the seate, they both spurred away with all possible speede. In shorte time they came to the place where Ariodant and his companions had beene discomfited, and Adylas this day intended to dislodge with his pauillions, that hee might meet Mauspasian at Tauris, there to deliuer such prisoners to him as he had gotten from Ariodant.

Beeing come into this place, they were soone espyed by one of the knights of the king of Thunis, this knight was named Argontes, one of the most faithfull friends to the king, and as valiant as any in all the troope, hee beeing by chaunce first mounted in this preparation of departure, sitting with a huge strong Launce auaunced vpon his thigh. This was the first man, that needes would knowe what these two knights were, who durst with such boldnes come so neere their hoste. For this purpose, and without speaking woord to any one, he galloped with a swift carrire towards them, and when he was so neere, that hee might easily discerne them to be straungers: he slacked his pace, when the

first bee must needes speake to, was the Fayrie knight, to whom arrogantly he thus began. Be stirre ye fellows, and come after me to king Adylas my Lord, to tell him of whence ye are, and what ye seeke in this place: for I take yee to be spyes, sent hither (to worke some treason) by these Christians, that are mustered vp in the Cittie of Tauris: otherwise I would presently slice yee in such small gobbets, as a Rauen might easily beare in his beake the biggest piece of your bodyes. Freend, quoth Gerileon, I thinke yee meane not so ill as yee speake, for no such matter appeares in your countenance. But setting a parte these tearmes of brauerie, I pray ye goe tell king Adylas your maister, that heere is a knight errant, accompanyed with one of those Christian knights, whom lately (both causelesse and verye shamefully) he monstrously abused. Say I bid him, (if he be a man of worth or any valour) that immediatly he come forth in equipage conuenable for the combate, and accompanyed with such an other: to make this knight amends, and to repayre the wrong done to Ariodant, in charging his troope with too much aduantage, and thereby entermedled with affayres neither touching or concerning him. If he will not doo it, I say he is a villaine and a traytour: for were he not so, he would not offer offence to any one, without habilitie of meanes to make requitall. By my faith, answered Argontes, thou art a very foole, in comming hether to be kild with credit, and to let thee know, how much better it had beene for thée to haue kept thée quiet, then trauaile to this place with such mallepart kinde of language: I will not suffer that the king my Lorde, nor any of his people but my selfe onely, shall teach thée against another time better wisdome, as also to speake more aduisedly, and therefore stand vppon thy guarde. In vsing these words, he drew back, that his horse might haue his course, and hee bayle his Launce against Gerileon: who made so little account therof, that he reserued his labour to better effect then the Pagan did, and

there,

therefore shrunke aside to scape the attaint. Whereat Taffinor was gretly abashed, thinking he did it by cowardise, or feare to meddle with the Pagan, which made him imagine euill of him, and nothing at all to regard him, as Argontes did likewise: who finishing his race to no purpose, prepared toward Taffinor, calling him to the Iouſt, which hee refused because hee had no Launce. But laying hand to his sword for the combate, hee brauely made against the Pagan, who likewise let go his Launce, and drew out his sword to entertaine him: which Gerileon perceiuing, and doubting the length of their fight would growe too tedious, whilathe Pagans beeing so neere them, might charge them in greater number, then they should bee able to deale withall, or withstand, seeing himselfe likewise vnprouided of a sword, for ye haue heard how his was broken in combate with the Sauage Polyppe: he forthwith determined to kill the Pagan, because he would be possessed of his weapon, which he imagined no hard matter to compasse, as in verye deed it was not: for running against him with meruaylous violence, he gaue him such a peazant knocke with the butte end of his launce, as ouerthrew both his horse and him to the ground, and strugling vnder the horse, that trampled very heauily vpon him, there both his pride, arrogancie and life ended all together. This done, Gerileon alighted and toke his sword, saying to Taffinor, that therewith he would send more of his companions after him: which Taffinor beeing not a little ioyfull to heare, returned this answere. Now haue I good hope Sir, that (by your meanes) I shall bee auenged of the outragious wrongs done me by the Pagans, and were our happe so fortunate, that Ariodant would returne to succour vs, (as thereof I am assured if hee bee not dead, for hee is a prince impacient of iniurie:) wee might easilye ouercome and vanquish the hoste of Adylas. For amongst them all himselfe is most redoubted, being so good and able a knight of person, as there are few in Persia that can equall him in

foundnes of chiualrie: nor could wee haue beene conquered by his souldiours, had not he put to his helping hand.

In middest of this talke, whilst Gerileon armed himselfe with the sword of dead Argontes, and Taffinor with his Launce, Adylas caused the Trumpets to be sounded, declaring his departure from the place, where he had beene encamped and sojourned so many dayes together: at which instant he called for Argontes his faithfull freend, but he could not be found in all the hoste, then commaunding to vnderstand what was become of him, ten or twelue knights of the troupe toke the same waye, they saw him gallop before. At last they beheld the two Christian knights, riding with vnconquerable countenance towards the Tents of Adylas and a little further off they sawe Argontes dead, his horse likewise lying beating with his houes vppon him, not able to rise: whereat they were enflamed with such rage, (for Argontes was well and deerely beloued of all Adylas hoste) as they could no longer containe their furie, but forcible made against the Christian knights. Against Gerileon foure of them brake their Launces, without any further iniurie vnto him: but hee had better successe, for the first he met, felt so soundly the sharpnes of his launce, as piercing quite thorow his bodie, layd him dead on the earth. Two other that came out after these foure, began very fiercely to assaile Taffinor: but for all that they vnhorsed him not, yet one of them receiued a deadly wound on his shoulder at his hand, and so was forced to fall to the ground. They that came after, hauing their swordes naked in their handes, couragiously aduentured on the Christian knights, who being ready prepared, receiued the valiant strokes of the Pagans on their sheelds, without any hurt vnto their bodyes: marie each of them stood so stiffely to the Pagans, as Gerileon sent one of their heads roundlie from his shoulders, and Taffinor slicing off an others arme from his bodye, made both Gerileons stroke and his owne agree in an hermonie:

for the first Pagan dyed immediatly, and the other caught such a sudden sicknes, as his bloud abundantly streaming forth, called his life soone after. The rest of their companions were not a little amazed heereat, especially at the puissant strokes of Gerileon, with the exceeding vertue, valiancie and addresse that they discerned in him, so that fyre of their fellowes lying dead before their faces, the other fearefully fled to the troupe of Adylas, that they might to him declare their misfortune: but they were followed euen thither by Gerileon and Taffinor, at whose hardinesse Adylas stood greatly abashed, and the rather, because (in his presence) Gerileon ouertaking two of the tardyest fugitiues, from one he lopt the eare, cheeke, and shoulder, together, and tooke off the others head so neatly, as if the keenest Rasor in the world had beene the instrument.

All the troupe standing affrighted heereat, durst not boudge one foote, but taryed to heare the pleasure of their king, who was surprised with no common kinde of pensiuenes, imagining that Gerileon was one of the Gods whom he adored, to wit, Mars the God of battailes, and (as they supposed) that hee was highly displeased with them. When hee beheld what hauock the Fayrie knight made of his people, hee came forth from the middest of his troupe, to know for certaintie what he was, and if he were one of their gods, with praiers, oblations and sacrifices he would appease his anger: but Gerileon that made no regarde of such folly, prepared to endure the braue against all the rest. And for this cause, hee entred further in among them with Taffinor, where sundring themselues, no one durst stirre to approach néere them, for in Gerileons countenance they noted such high resolution, as they reputed him alone able to foyle a farre greater hoste of men.

Euen as a lustie Mower in the harvest time, in the middest of a well growne field, with a sharpe Scythe in his hand, cuts downe the grasse and hearbes about him in very

great quantitie: euen like feare had the Pagans of this noble warriour, verily thinking him to be some celestiall deitie: and many times had they béene brought into such errour, for when they beheld any one, who by his haughtie déedes séemed to surpasse the common valour of men, and had some thing in him to out goe other in hardinesse: they easily were induced to beléue, that this was one of their imaginarie Gods. This false perswasion serued very well for these two Christians, because if all the troupe had risen against them, you quickly may conceiue their daunger: but the good Angell that conducted them, by the helps of God assisted them in such sort, as Adylas alone offered spéech to Gerileon, and that in this manner. I pray thée if thou bee one of the Gods, whose habitations is in heauen, tell or shew me by some signe if I haue offended thee, and wherein I haue giuen cause, that thou shouldst thus destroy me and my people: assuring thée, that if by prayers, oblations and sacrifices, thine anger is not to bee appeased, and thy furie qualified, thou shalt no sooner bee returned to thy celestiall mansion, but presently thou shalt in aboundance feele, the pleasant perfume and exquisite Sabeene odour, with large gifts in thy Temple, and offerings on thine Altar, by me bestowed to thine honor and glory. Or if thou be some mortall creature, that hast reason thus to come and assayle me, killing Argontes my faithfull Achates, beside so many of my souldiours: then onely tell to me the cause heereof, and assure thy selfe, that I will repaire whatsoeuer iniurie, which thou pretendest to haue receiued by me, neither shall any of my men once meoue to offend thée, for the great valour and vertue I esteeme to be in thée. But if without any reasonable occasion, thou hast dared thus boldly to abuse me: thou mayst be well assured, that thou shalt be chastised according to thy deserts. Knight (answered Gerileon) I imagine thée to be the most apparant man of al thy troupe, and (as I haue heard) thou art called Adylas king of Thunis, a knight verye

famous

famous and of great reputation, as I gather, because I see thée affable and courteous. Wherefore I freely tell thée, that I am none of the supposed Gods thou talkest of, but credit me, I am a knight errant, ignorant of the place wher I was borne, and the parents that gaue me life: but trauayle thorow the worlde, whether fortune and my destinie conducts me, in search of such aduentures as merrit fame. Not long since, and not far hence, I slew a cruell monster, called the sauage Polyppe, where I met this knight, who told mee what causeles shame both thou and thy company (being ods of to great aduantage) offered a Christian prince called Ariodant, one of whose traine he was: thou hauing discomfited him and his men, detainest some of them as prisoners, which iniurie he intreated me to reuenge, and I haue vndertaken it both vpon thée & thine: for well thou knowest, that by the lawe of chiualrie, inuiolably obserued among such as are woorthie to beare the title of knighthood, all errant knights séeking aduentures, are bound to reuenge the opprobrious wrongs, that the ouerstrong offer to the ouerweake, hauing no iust cause or reason therefore, and to defend them against all forcible violence, indirectly throwne vppon miserable and afflicted persons, maintaining euermore the quarrell of the wronged that haue no helpe. Besides, the quarrell (for which thou hast so hardly dealt with Ariodant and his people) is publique, touching all good Christians, of which number I am one, and for euer will be: so by consequence it appertaineth to mee, inciting mee to wreake reuenge, for the iniurie done to my confederates, that are of selfe same religion as I am, against all that are of the contrarye and aduersarie faith. Because then thou hast nothing else now to do, prouide thée presently to the combate with me, if thou be so desirous as thou hast expressed: for thou séest I haue reason to assaile thée, and for whatsoeuer else I haue doone beside. Hauing thus spoken, it happened as ye shall read hereafter, for now we are to speake of other matters.

CHAP.

CHAP. 14.

Of the warre betweene the Christians and the Pagans that had layde siege before the famous Cittie of London. And howe king Angrafolt, prisoner to king Floridamant, became enamoured of the princesse Polydamie. And how many sundry sortes of nations, came by heapes to the Pagans Campe for theyr succour.

IN this place, the Authour of this Historie discontinueth a while, from speaking of the heroycall gestes and dées of the knight Gerileon, to take the discourse againe heretofore begun, touching the cruell and bloodie warre betwéene the Christians and Pagans, that held siege before the proud and famous Cittie of London: ensuing vpon that you haue read in the former part of this Booke, where alreadie hath beene told yee, how the hote and fierce assault against the Cittie, vnder the conduct of furious Angrafolt was ended.

Now remaineth to acquaint ye, with what happened after the Pagans were chased thence, sustaining so great losse and slaughter of their men, beside their cheefe heads and conducters Angrafolt and Mycophon beeing taken prisoners, then thus we proceed. The night after this meruaylous assault against the good and vertuous king Floridamant, dooing a déed becomming a king that feared God and looned his people, as euery prince that is called to so high dignitie ought doo, séeing and knowing, how without helps of the celestiall bountie, he was in most great danger of totall ruine, (which had béene no small hurt to all Christendome)

doome) also that as yet hee had some aduantage of his enemies, hauing subiected one of the principall heads to his will, and an other of the best knights in all their troope: he would not now shew himselfe slothfull, but perfourme the act of a good Christian, by yéelding thanks and prayses to God, with intreatance to continue towards him and his people, these fauourable effects of his almightie goodnes, cheefely in a quarrell so iust and equitable, as was the cause of this seuere and outragious warre.

To this end, the same night that eche was retired from the fight, hee commanded the belles in all the Churches of the Cittie to be knoled, to assemble and call together all his people, from the highest to the lowest that had knowledge of God: willing them to render dutifull thanks to God, praying that in mercie he would assist them, against his vnbeléeuing enemies who would not acknowledge him: which euery one did very deuoutly; and there was no holye place throughout the Cittie, where lampes, torches, and tapers, were lighted, but the people flocked thither in exceeding number. And for this purpose, the aforenamed places were perfumed with incense and Aromaticall odours, besides the musicall and mellodious voyces of Priests, Moonkes, singing children, and other seruants of God, who with hearts full of heauenly deuotion, sung Canticles of prayse, with prayers agréeable and pleasing to God. Continuing thus well nére all the night, such as were more apte for warre, fayled not to be on the walles in their glittering Armour, to impeach the enemie, that hee should presume so prowdlye as the daye before hee had doone: in which time, they that were in guarde and kept the night watche, went to thanke God, and afterwards to their rest.

Angrafolt, whome king Floridament had taken prisoner, séeing all these things, admired the mertaylous foresight of the king, the industrie, care and vigilance he vsed, for preparation of the Cities defence and people: when well hee

perceiued, that many of the Pagans should loose their liues, before they could banquish the people beloued of God: but beyond all other things, he was astonned at the sight of the faire Infant Polydamic, who by commaundement of the king her father, entertayned him beningly, and shewed him good countenance: because the king had determined to intreat and vse him with such contentment, as the force of his kindnes and benignitie, might mollifie the hard crueltie of his enemies. And so making them (against their nature) soft and gentle, they might bee induced to vse humanitie & courtesie, to foure worthie Christian knights, Accial of Surrie, Ramelin of Huich, Melchior of Ireland, and Frangard Countie of Durford, whom the Giant Brisard and Rongemont had taken prisoners in combatting. For this cause he perswaded Angrafolt, to write vnto king Grandowin his father, to vse those foure hardy knights so kindly as might bee: which he did, fearing if they misdealt with the Christians, by ouer sharpe or inhumaine seueritie, like rigour would be vsed towards him, and he should be as cruelly tormented. Heereupon the Pagans did not put them to death, as otherwise they would haue doone, for the liues of these foure valiant knights was desired of king Floridamant, more then the death of fiue hundred of his enemies, considering the present necessitie he was in.

And although Angrafolt (before his taking) was aboue all other a fierce and cruell aduersarie against him, yet now hee was so ouercome by the courtesie and kindnesse of the king vsed toward him: as more gladly would he continue in this prisonment, then returne againe to his companions, for in such sorte was hee arrested by the fayre Infants beautie, which in his eye excelled all other bee had seene before, as made him more desirous to abide in this fayre prison: so that when libertie was offered him, hee had no will to forgoe this swete seruitude. For yee must vnderstand, that beyond her naturall perfection, which was no lesse absolute

solute then I haue tolde yee: shee was adorned with such sumptuous garments, iewels and other trickes of embellishment, as like stately princesses are accustomed to weare, that the barbarous king feeling himselfe altogether surprised with her loue, desired nothing more, then dayly to liue in contemplation of her good graces: and albeit thereby he receiued some pleasure and contentment, yet was it a greefe and martirdome to him to enioy nothing else, his amourous conceit being vnable to compasse any other effect, then this vaine imagination and fantasticall contemplation, so lying figured in his hart. And if by chaunce he dreamed on some little shew of hope, that perswaded him he should enioy the pleasant skirmishes of loue: yet presently againe was hee kild and discomforted: not vnlike the angrie and arrogant boot-haling Pirate, that was wonte to tyrannize and triumphe ouer poorer theeues then himselfe, seeing he is (for some offence by him committed) bound fast by the leg with a chaine, blames the houre of his birth, exclaiming on God and his iustice, without any feare or regarde of his supreme greatnesse.

Euen so was this proud Pagan tormented, and in his torment oftentimes to himselfe, hee imagined some subtill and detestable meane, whereby he might rauish the young and tender princesse, or forcibly carrie her awaye: When shee (good Ladye) without any thought of euill or mallice, vsed him most gratiousslie and courteous, euermore shewing him freendly and smilyng countenances, and (according as the king her father had giuen in charge) would manie and sundrie tymes, entertayne him with honest talke and familiare conference: which more and more serued to prouoke forward his loue, and from milde amourous conceit to make him more violent, inducing this cruell enemie to an euill and pernicious intent, such as heereafter ye shall knowe more of. For in this Chapter I must tell yee what chaunced (meane while) in the enemyes Campe.

whether safely were retyred (as yee haue read in the first booke) the king Guittard of Baccaleos and the Carybes, who had beene in the thickest of the hurlie burlie: and not a little offended were they, to be thus shamefully driuen and repulsed from their enterprise.

It is necessarie then that wee consider, howe almightie God doth sometime send afflictions on the good, to make tryall of their perseuerance in well doing, supporting with pacience the aduersities wherewith they are exercised: so it seemed now, that he would permit the Pagans of all countreys farre and neere, to assemble together with their inexpugnable forces, to peruert and ruinate altogether the estate of Christendome, whereof the kingdome of England was the great and strongest colour. For the day after this meruaylous assault, there arriued in the enemies campe for their helpe and succour, a great multitude of their allyes and confederates, such as had vowed with them the euersion and totall ruine of Christendome. Among others there came a Captaine sent by the king of the Turkes, named Grimoaldo, a man hardie and valiant of person: who conducted vnder his Ensignes fiftie thousand braue fighting men, and in good equipage. Yee with his troope was welcommed and receiued by the heads of the Pagan armie, especially of the old king Grandowin, who feasted and entertained him in the best manner he could deuise, for hee knew well, that this Grimoaldo was a man of marke, as skilfull in feates of armes as any in all the host. He caused him to be lodged in the reregard of his Campe, whereof he was the head and gouernour, and this fresh supply made the Heathen so glad and ioyfull, as nothing was heard among them but sounding of Tabourines, Trumpets, and other warlike instruments, expressing no little ioy and pleasure amongst them, with menaces against them of the Cittie, of quick discomfiture and extermination.

This ioy endured a great many dayes together, and as

their

they? succour encreased, so did they? ioussance, for besides this Turkish Captaine, there came a puissant and meruaylous Pagan, of monstrous forme and Giantine stature, a proud monster, mutinous, and a mightie drinker. He had thrée heads or faces vppon on neck that supported them all, and when he entred the Campe, he wore a massie Crowne of golde, triple fourmed according to his heads: the crownes were made high like the Turrets of a strong Tower, and vnderneath was written this verse.

I am Triphon, the great and puissant king of Scythia,
The most valiant and strongest, in combate I conquer.

This arrogant and proud subscription was no leasing, for he was so strong and puissant, as himselfe was able to foile a whole Armie: and therefore to this assembly he brought with him but ten thousand combattants, with whome hee thought himselfe sufficient to subiugate all Christendome. And the cause why he bare these thrée crownes, was not in respect of his thrée faces so combine together: but because he was king of thrée kingdomes, and held thrée cruell kinde of people vnder his obeysance, to wit, the Getes, the Scythians, and the Sarmates or Sauromates. He shewed in the middest of his troope, as a great high Pine trée in the midst of a little wood, where the braunches beeing but young and tender, do begin to spread: for besides his vnmeasurable stature, he was mounted on a furious bull of exceeding height, more prompt and apt to beare a saddle, run and carrire, then any horse that was to be found in the world, as fit was he likewise eyther for the iouste or combate: because if the Pagan seated on his backe ouerthrew his aduersarie, the bull immediatly with his hornes would beate downe the horse, whereon the knight that fought against him was mounted. In this manner, enuironed with his men, entred hee the Pagans campe, many of them being surprised with meruai-

lous feare, to see him of such a terrible aspect and furious forme.

The other that were of better spirite and courage, knew well, that his arrivall would bee greatly succourable to them, because his force and valiancie was vnspeakable and inuincible, farre beyond any other humaine strength. And he that ioyed most to see him, was the arrogant and fierce Brandissant, who sent for him, and at his request he came: for they two had long before beene companyons together, in many robberies and cruelties by them doone ioyntly, and by their association, forcibly, violently and thorow tiranny, they had gotten kingdomes, many rich booties and heritages, which they deuided betweene them as brethren, that parte the common heritage of their Father when hee is deceased.

So by reason of the wonted familiaritie and acquaintance that the one of them had with the other, they vsed many sundrie ceremoniall embracings to each other, being glad they had so fortunately met in this place, where they assured themselues of the pillage and spoyle, of the famous and wealthie Cittie of London, besides the rich treasure of king Floridamant, after they had vsed towards him and his people, the like or more bloodier cruelties, then euer the Grecians in times past did shew to Pryam and his warlike Troyans.

And surely this good Christian king was verye sad and sorrowfull in his heart, seeing himselfe so weake against such a puissant armie, wherein were so many hardie and strong knightes, as but fewe like them could bee founde through the whole world, and aboue all the rest this monster of Scythia was most redoubted, in that he was most to be feared for his force and crueltie: yet notwithstanding, putting his trust in God, the walles of his cittie beeing strong and well appointed, hee was pacient in this perill, expressing meruaylous hardinesse in his countenance, encourg-

couraging his people with fayre speeches and exhortations, that by their generous ages and behauiour, they should be vigilant and carefull for the defence of the cittie, giuing them to vnderstand by worthie examples, how religiously every subiect stood bound to their king and countrie in that behalfe.

The enemyes on the contrarie side (for the reasons alreadie declared) were so merrie and iocand, as through their campe was nothing but songs of ioye and pleasure, dronken passimes, beastly gourmandisings, and such like insolencies; for besides the succour before rehearsed, came to the Pagan hosse two strong and puissant kings from the coast of Barbarie, the one named Phoas king of Alger, and the other Orontes king of Marocco, both cosens germaine, and kinne in the same degree to Adylas king of Thunis, and to the king of Phez whom we spake of before, beeing of no lesse force and valour then those two. Withall they brought in their companie a great multitude of armed men, good archers bearing Persian Bowes and arrowes, with poysonned heads, the number of their men was sortie thousand.

By these meanes it seemed, that God being angrie and displeased with his people, would now thoroughly scourge them, suffering in so short time, such a mightie power of enemies to be assembled: whereof heere I purpose to speake no more, but in the following Chapter you shall heare what happened.

CHAP.

CHAP. 15.

How the Pagans reioysing for the succour, that thus came daylye to them from all partes: the prisoner Angrafolt had minde of nothing, but the looue of the fayre Princesse Polydamie. In meane while, the olde Grandowin assembled his councell of sixteene puissant kings, who concluded on an vniust resolution: whereof king Floridamant made no account, but minded to defend himselfe, and withstand the furious assaultes of his enemies. And howe hee heard tidings of helpe from Spaine and Fraunce.

All the Pagan Armie being in this ioy and merriment, for the newe supplyes that came to them, as before yee haue heard, some hoping to loade themselues with rich buttes and pillage, others in the destruction of the Englishe Citties and townes, which greedie desire made them to vndertake this warre, and this they would obtaine, or die in pursuite thereof, (as at this day too many are found of like disposition) others incited and enflamed with desire of honor, but they were very fewe in number to the former sorte, wishing for speedie fight with king Floridamants hardie and valiant knights, the conquest of whom would bring them immortall reputation, and this desire especially made them be seene in this warre, because many of their friends and kindred were slaine in the assault before the Cittie, and for their deaths they had reason to seeke reuenge: but aboue the rest, the olde king Grandowin, chiefe of this Armie, the

most ancient and malicious enemie in the troope, appeasing his conceiued greefe, for the imprisonment and captiuitie of Angrafolt his eldest sonne: quickly sent him word of these good newes, and how daye by day there came to him from many places fresh supplyes, whereof if I should here make report, it would require a very large discourse: neuertheless, in running thorow the progresse of these assayes and fate of this warre, he may gather some breefe perticularities hereafter. And to admit comparison, not Alexander, Darius, Xerxes, no not the Romaines, nor the Greekes before Troye, assembled so many fighting men together at one instant, as now was before the Cittie of London: so that according to generall oppinion, especially of the besieged, it was held for certainty, that all the kingdom of great Britaine was ruined and lost.

Of all these things was Angrafolt auertised, and exhorted to worke some meanes of secret commotion within the Cittie, if he could deuise any way whereby to compasse it: but this two-folde taken prisoner, made full reckoning of all these newes and auertisements, his thoughts onely at some secret cogitation, howe or which way hee might most commodiously steale away the young princesse Polydamie, or otherwise gaine some amourous iouissance, the onely medicine for his languishing passions, which continually maistred his wonted humours: making sometime a courteous and affable knight contrary to his nature, and sometime againe so drowned in melancholly, as the sight of any one but his fayre mistresse offended him. A thing questionlesse very strange, that he who was such a sauage and cruell enemie to all humanitie, not to bee conquered by anye kinde meanes, whose former desires aymed at nothing, but to see himselfe in the midest of a battayle, holding his bloudie Launce or Courtlaye in his hand, burning with enflamed affection of fighting without measure: should now bee so subiected to the lookes of a soft and delicate maiden, carye

ing him daily (as it were) bound after her, without thinking either on battayle, armour, sword, shield, horse or armes: his minde was bent to conferre familiarly with Polydamie, or counting it a cheefe felicitie to bee in sight of her, for all things else were death to his amorous desires.

Grandown in meane while (being ignorant of this unexpected accident) one day called an assembly of his kings and such as were the chiefe of his armie, to the Pauillion where counsell was accustomed to be holden: to the end they might deligently deliberate on their present affaires, and by what meanes they were likeliest to gaine home againe their prisoned friends. At this counsell there met about fifteene or sixteene puissant kings, all wearing Crownes, and were placed according to their auncient honor and degree. The first was king Brandissant, next, the puissant Tryphon king of Scythia, king Fauladas, king Guittard of Bracalcos, king Marton of Cantabres, king Phoas of Alger, Orontes king of Marocco, king Grimoaldo, king Pagotroff, king Salazard, king Kambarell, the strong king Zorlet, Borant king of Carybe, Mauras king of Bohemia, with the proud and arrogant king Phorban of Mœotides, a brave Pagan, and a worthie knight. All these being assembled, to set downe some resolution touching their busines, after they had long debated on diuersitie of opinions, such as were seuerally deliuered in counsell: they concluded in the end to write to king Floridamant, that within thies dayes following he should come unto them, and bring with him the two prisoners Angrafolr and Mycrophon, commanding him to bee guide to the prisoners himselfe, accompanyed with the best knights that then were in the Cittie, six in number. Likewise to bring two hundred of the fayrest maidens, all virgins, and of mariageable yeeres, not exceeding fifteene or sixteene at the most, that they might vse their pleasure with them. In meane while, to send all the riches and treasure, which

both

both himselfe and his Cittizens had in their most secret coffers or cabinets, for search whereof, they would send an hundred of their souldiers into the Cittie; and euer after it should continue as a yeerely tribute to the chiefe of their Armie, twenty Virgins of noble familie and exquisit beautie, besides two Millions of Golde.

Moreouer, he and his knights should come bare headed, and without any armour, to aske pardon of great king Grandowin for the death of his sonnes, in reuenge whereof this warre was commenced: withall, that hee and his knights should voluntarily submit themselues to his mercie, that hee might dispose of their liues and goods as seemed best to him: when peradventure he would take pittie on them, not putting them to death so cruelly, nor race the Cittie, nor murther all the rest of his people, as otherwise he intended to doo, (if he denied theyr demaund) with such ruine and desolation, as neuer was mention made of the like.

To carrie these newes of this fayre resolution, was immediatly dispatched a messenger towards king Floridamant, to whome the gate of the Cittie was presently opened, to vnderstand the cause of his comming: and hauing performed what hee imagined concerning his demayre, deliuering the before named Letters to the king: whereupon his maiestie greiwe presently into exceeding great anger and rage: yet cunningly shadowing his concetued displeasure, hee made no other answere to the messenger, but that his intent was not to accomplish and performe a-nie of those seuerall demaundes, in that they were euer iniurious and vnreasonable, and not to bee allowed of in any wise.

Besides that (hee sain) if his enemies eyther had or should set downe such a resolution concerning his ruine and destruction: hee with his councell and Nobles were concluded to stande on theyr defence, in resistance of the

least euill that might be. For the rest, each one should doe their vttermost endeuour, according as himselfe hitherto had doone, and neuer yet could any enemy compell him to matters against his will, wherefore it was too late for him now to begin: and so (quoth he to the messenger) yee may returne with this answere. Which presently he did, whereat the Pagans greatly mernayled, that a man hauing so few to helpe him, should containe such hardinesse, as to talke to them of resistance: aboue all the rest, old Grandowin was extreamely enraged, saying, that this was not the first act, wherein appeared the effects of king Floridamants euer-weening, wherefore he would speedily take such order with his people, as should sharpely make him repent his follie and rashnesse.

Whereuppon, within three daies following at the most, each one should prepare himselfe readie to armes, when such an assault should be made against the cittie, as not one stone should be left standing vppon another, but bee rased and extermined altogether. In regard whereof, euery one should withdraw himselfe to his quarter, and gine order for all things needfull against the day of assault. Hereof the Christian king being aduertised, commaunded the Pagan Mycrophon to bee closely locked vp, to the end that during this troublesome time, hee might compasse no meane of working any treacherie or treason. But as for the king of Corse, hee restrayned not him of libertie, which hee had to walke within the walles of the Pallace royall, where was roome sufficient and verye spacious: well perceiuing that he was so carryed away with the loue of his daughter, with whom and the Queene Bellizene he still kept company, assuring them, that he would expose himselfe rather for theyr defence then offence: and in respect of the conuersation he had had with them, no iniurie should bee offered to theyr bonds.

In which speeches the Queene reposing some confidence,

but

but the maydan especially: the more willingly they would conuerse with him, and among other familiar conferences, the Ducene made him recount the number of straunge nations, the diuersitie of kings and great captaines that were in their Armie, their estate, forces and deedes of chiualrie, by them in former times performed. By which reports they cunningly gleaned from this imprudent Pagan, what best might serue for the defence of the Cittie, and thorow euermuch talke, he discouered how, on which side, and by what secret meanes, the enemyes had concluded to assaile and seaze on the Cittie: withall hee declared to them, the manner and customs that those nations were wont to obserue and vse in such warre, which was most likelyest, and which not.

By these meanes king Floridamant had knowledge of many things, that serued as speciall rules of discipline to his Court of guard, and therefore appointed his men in readines against the threatned daye: continually trauayling day and night with Grandilaor, Ferrand, Candior, Sylban, and other hardie knights of name that were in the Cittie with him, who (according to his commaund) busied themselues very carefully, letting nothing slip that any way concerned their change. During which time, one night secretly arriued at the Cittie wall, the two valiant knights, Andregon Duke of Suffolke, and Lampridion Countie of Norffolke, both Cosens germaine, and highly beloued of king Floridamant. The first came from demaunding helpe for the Christians, of Dorian king of Spayne, and the other from the like affaires in the kingdome of Gaule, whether they were sent, before the Pagan armie had engirt the Cittie with siedge, and both returning at one selfe same time, after many aduentures befalling them in the expedition of their voyages, met together on the way, and so trauailing in company, arriued there about the houre of midnight, not being espyed by any of the enemies Campe, who then were in

their dead sleepe, and comming to the foote of the wall, on that side, where the king of the Suitzers had charge, and where as then a good Citizens was Sentinell one of the richest and best Souldiours of the Cittie, being called Hoaster, that knew them very well, because he had familiarlie frequented the houses of these two Christian knights, and and they well perceiuing, that Hoaster knew them by their speech, sent presently word of their arriuall to king Floridamant, who caused the neerest gate of the cittie to them to be opened, when they safely entred, not being at all discouered by the enemie. Yee that came from Spaine aduertised his maiestie, how king Dorian vnderstanding his war against the Pagans, concluded immediatly to come himselfe in person, attended on by a strong and puissant armie, to assist king Floridamant his old companion, and the christian people that inhabited great Brittaine: for which cause he summoned a meeting of his subiects, promising to be in England in very short time. These tidings brought Andregon, and Lamprydion deliuered the like from king Belligand of Gaule how forward hee was in deuoire to send him succour, his armie being leuyed and readie to depart, and had ere then set forward, but that the king daylye expected the Prince Diodamas his sonne, a man of great valour, who had not long before receiued his order of knighthood: being gon in quest of an other knight, that had in his keeping a Fayrie Launce, where of hee had robd the king his father, which Launce hee heard was againe recouered by the young prince, and he returning homeward, when being come, hee should away to England with the armie. For these glad tidings king Floridamant thanked God, trusting in him and to the speeding supplie each houre expected: resoluing to defend himselfe if he should be assayled, without any issuing forth to the enemie, neither to fight, except he should be enforced thereunto, until these Armies were ioyned with him. Attending which time, he thought good to prolong

the

day of the assault, keeping their enemies in breath, and their assayes in good foresight: which to compasse, he thought on euery likely and expedient remedie, as yee may perceiue in the Chapters following.

CHAP. 16.

Howe the Princesse Polydamie, beholding from the height of a Tower, the Campe and countenance of the Pagans, was shewen by Angrafolt, who were the cheefe commaunders in so great a multitude. And the Princesse, seeing the Scythian monster, swouned with conceit of feare, when Angrafolt conueyed her thence into the Queenes chamber.

EAne while, to finde some meane of referring the generall assault, which the Pagans in their councell had determined against the Cittie of London: king Floridamant consulted with the bauois knights of his councell, and other noble personages, that then were in the Cittie with him, to receiue aduise from them, what best might be doone for defence of the Christians against all euents, inuenting honest excuses to delay the day of battaile, and tarrie for the supplie which was comming. The Pagans on the other side disposed their men (being many in number) to assayle the besiedged, forecasting all the best wayes and meanes for the same that might be possible. And as these assayes passed on in this sort, the fayre Infant Polydamie being on the top of a high Tower of the pallace royall, where she might behold the conserted and bad ordered multitude of enemies: sawe them marching forth of their pauillions, which were erected a pretty way off from the cittie, that they

might

might ſo raine themſelues nearer, where the Archers, Croſ-
bowes and Slings might eaſilie reache the towne with
their ſhaftes and ſtones: as in thoſe times the Pagan nati-
ons knew how to vſe the ſame, as well in aſſaylingas in
defending, or where they ſooneſt might come to handie
gripes, or make ſome ſudden ſurpriſe in the night, whereat
the beautifull maide was greatly abaſhed. But had they
beene aſſembled there, to ſome better purpoſe then they
were, ſhee might haue conceiued exceeding pleaſure, in be-
holding ſo many goodly Enſignes or Guydons, ſuch riche
gilt glittering armour, ſo many pikes and launces, ſo many
braue Captaines well furniſhed, ſo many hardie knights
well mounted in equipage, ſo many Drummes, Fyfes, and
Trumpets, which with warlike noyſe cheered vp the ſoul-
diers hearts: as one would haue ſayd, ſeeing the footmen
leape and daunce ſo merrily, and the horſemen carryre ſo
bravely, that they rather were prepared for a wedding then
the fight: yet notwithſtanding this pleaſing ſight, ſhe curſ-
ed them in her minde, deſiring better paſtime, and more
agreeable to her contentment.

Continuing in this diſpleaſed thought and contemplati-
on, Angrafolt the king of Corſe came vp to hir, hauing long
ſought her in many chambers of the Caſtell, and not find-
ing her, ye may gueſſe his greefe by his humor: for he was
ſo paſſionate and impatient in his loue, that beeing abſent
from the fayre Infants ſight, he could enioy no reſt, wher-
fore finding her by her ſelfe, after hee had ſo long ſought hir
in euery likely place: iudge yee whether he were pleaſed or
no, and the Princeſſe contrarywiſe diſpleaſed, to be alone in
ſuch a place, farre from the Muſenes company and the o-
ther Ladyes, with ſuch a mightie enemie to hir modeſtie,
which (as ſhe well knew) hee ſought all meanes to attempt:
yet ſeeing himſelfe to be a priſoner, fearing likewiſe to raiſe
any further offence in his enemies againſt him, and eſpeci-
ally being ouerruled by the force of loue, which made him ſo

milde

milde and gentle as I tolde yee before, he vsed such regard of the Princesse, as not so much as with a looke or a word, he would be drawne to vse any force or violence towards her. Which when the Lady noted, with a benigne and gracious welcome, wishing him to abandon those melancholly humours, she intreated him to shew and tell her perticularly, who and what were the cheefest leaders in that multitude. And seeing a Chariot richly bedeckt with golde and siluer, drawne by foure lustie grete Coursers beauty caparisoned, wherein sat an auncient knight, his beard white, and countenance reuerend, enuironed with a goodly troope of horsemen, that rode before him along the field, all the bining vnto him, and rainging which way hee pleased: she was desirous to know the estate of this old man, whom first her eyes had taken view of, wherefore she thus began.

I pray yee sir knight, if ye beare me such loue as ye haue made speeche of; tell me truely what this old man is, that rides in such riche and fayre a Chariot, to sport himselfe along the Campe. Lady, quoth Angrafolt, I shall willingly tell yee without fabling, for in obeying your commaund, I would make no spare of my life, much lesse then deny to satisfie yee in this. Among these matters of so great importance, know madame, that this is the puissant king Grandowin my father, cheefe of all this great multitude of men by him leuied, in his youth he hath done many fayre signell and worthie deedes of memorie, and although (by reason of his yeares) hee is not as hee hath beene, readie in force and prawesse for the fight: yet is hee so wise and pollitique in councell, concerning these affayres of warre, a Prince so riche, opulent and redoubted withall, as all the Pagan nations stand in aine of him, respecting onely his commaundement. All these which you see heere, are mustered for his defence (the renowne of his vertue and prudence hauing spread through the world) are all at his direction, to fight, defeyne citties, or what else besides, and glad are they to learne

of him the wrights, stratagems and also discipline of mi-
litarie profession, wherein yee hath more knowledge then
all the pagan princes besides, and swayes them all under
his owne ensuite, as yee doth this multitude which yee heere
beholde. When tell me sir, quoth she, what is yonder portly
knight of stature, whose countenance appeareth so proud
and arrogant, that with his great blacke Courser fetcheth
such carrires and corsets, having so rich and fayre a plume
of feathers blew and white in the treall of his Helmet, an-
swering the same in couller that are on his horsses head: his
Beuer being open, makes me coniecture by the small sight
of his face, that hee should bee a man of high resolue, and in
martiall enterprises a couragious warriour. Besides, if
mine eye deceiue mee not, hee somewhat resembles your
selfe in countenance, the couller of your haire nothing dissee-
ting: for his armes, as I guesse standing so farre off, hee
beares in his sheild three bloudie rampant Lions in a field
bleue.

Yes whom yee speake of Madam, answered Angrafolt,
seeming so hardie and magnanimous, is my brother Bran-
dissant, a man repleat with wunderfull prowesse, valiant
and readie at armes beyond all the rest of the armie, a riche
and mightie prince both in lands and treasure, who in his
tender youth held such warre against his enemies, as ouer-
throwing and vanquishing them, he conquered withall sun-
dries fayre and opulent kingdomes, rich and fertile, well
garnished with people, borne and brought vp to follow the
swarres. But he (quoth Polydamie) whom I behold yonder a
little on the left hand, who priding in the course of his horse,
makes him carrire toward king Brandissant your brother:
hee beares in his sheild foure Giants, and the figure of a
monster dead or slaine as I coniecture by the painting, and
there stands a knight triumphing in the conquest: what is
he? and what are those other three that follow in the same
course, all seeming to be of one minde or disposition. They

are (quoth Angrafolt) foure great Pagan princes, the subiects and seruants to king Brandissant my brother: the first of them is called Solazard, that beares the monster and the Giants slaine, as yee perceiue by the painting in his sheeld, those in times past hee alone vanquished in a foughten field.

He is a riche and puissant Lorde, a man of great valour and addresse at armes, and by reason of his prowesse worthie estimation: though he were deformed and of monstrous fashion, as ye might see if he were vnarmed. The other likewise that follow, are knights of marke and great reputation, the one is king of Niuarie, a riche and opulant kingdome, that with one launce brought to death thirtie Cantabres, when king Brandissant my brother made warre vpon them, wherefore at this day he beares them all depainted in his sheeld, as yee might behold, if the greene shadow were away wherewith it is couered. As for the other two, they are the valiant Cambarell and Pagotraff, kings of the Ionnian Iles, in riches and valour they are not equall to their two former brethren, but in age onely and nothing else: and further of in midst of the troupe, where ye see yond multitude of goodly pauillions, are their people, tarrying but when they shall bee ranged in order for the assault toward king Grandowin are they now martching: to vnderstand his aduise and councell, in what place they should assemble, while the rest of their companie beeing merrily disposed, fall to such pastimes as martiall men are wunte to exercise.

And fronting that troupe, yee may behold my six Giants, which shew so high aboue the other, as steeples in a citie ouerpeere the lowest buildings: and they are prepared (as they were when I maistred them) to resist a verye puissant armie. But what is he, quoth the princes, on the right hand, that rides on the roane Courser, managing a strong launce vppon his thigh, clad in blacke Armour graueh all ouer

 with

with golde, glittering so brauely as hee rides to an other troope some what further off.

You meane he Madame, sais Angrafolc, that beares three golden Swannes in his sheild, deciphered in a greene field, and bordered round about with purall golde? He I meane, answered the Princesse, that talkes with another knight of like apparaunce, hard by the multitude, mounted on a sorrell Courser, with a very strong Launce in his hand, and in his sheild three Leopards heads in a Sable field. It is, replyed the Corsean prince, the worthie king Tauladas of Canada, a man wonderfull affable and debonaire, albeit no lesse hardie with sword or Launce, then anye other in all the Campe: euen so is he with whome you see him talking, the redoubted Barant king of Carybe, they both being come to associate this warre, rather for proofe of man to man in combate, (against king Floridamant your father, the fame of whose renowned vertues called them hither) then anye desire to doo him hurt or damage: but true it is, that to fortifie our Campe, they haue brought with them from their countries and kingdomes, great store of armed men and well appointed. I am much deceiued, saye the princesse, if he whom I see tumbling with his face toward vs, bee not some Pagan king of great name: he I meane, that now marcheth accompanyed with twelue Knightes, all bearing Ensignes or Cognoisant diuers coullers in their hands, and he riding some what aloofe before them, on a horse maye whyte then anye swanne, harnessed with crimosin velvet, the studdes and buckles of perfect golde: and if mine eyes fayle me not, he carryeth three castels figured in his sheild, and these I take to be his armes.

Madame, answered the Pagan, I did not well note his countenance, because he suddenly turned back toward his troope here hard at hand: but if hee beare such armes as you speake of, it is the high Admirall Marton, king of Biscay my Cousine, verye ye and faithfull (among other things) to

conduct men of warre on the Seas, where in our comming hither hee was cheefe leader of all our Armie, hauing the whole gouernment and charge thereof, by reason of the great valour abiding in him, and long experience in manie affayres: they that follow him are all knights of eseeme, whose charge is to manage the Ensignes and Standards in the ships.

I haue not yet seene, sayd the Princesse Polydamie, two more braue and comely knights, then these two that ryde hitherward, ech on a black Steed, marked alike with white in their foreheads, their backs and leggs richly barnessed with greene velvet: one of them beares two Collomes in his sheeld, figured in an Azure field: the other a flourishing braunche of Roses, carrying their liuely Roses in a golden field, and each hath in his hand a Jaueling pointed with golde, and garnished with siluer studdes: their horses trot alike, both of one stature and height, I am persuaded they are none of the meanest in your companie, I pray ye sir tell me what they are. These two (Madame) are arriued heere since I was taken, but as I haue heard by messages from my noble father, they are the two princes Orontes and Phoas, the one king of Marocco, the other of Alger, two neighbouring kingdomes on the coast of Barbarie, abounding in riches and treasure, so likewise of their persons they are as hardie and valiant as any in the world, and as heauie enemies to the Christians and their religion, the expresse cause of their comming hither, to hurt and destroy them so much as possible they may.

As the Corsean king held on this speech to the princesse, the kings Maurus and Phorbon, and betweene them the monstrous Typhon king of Scithia, Gotia, Sarmata, and Geta, came forth of their pauilions to behoyne the yong princesse, and as the young Lady noted their gestures and countenance, intending to enquire what they were, casting her eyes vppon the Scythian Monster, mounted and equipped

in such forme and manner as before I haue tolde yee: shee was so surprized with feare at the verye sight of him, her heart beeing tender, daintie and delicate, as giuing a loud shrike, she fell in a swoune or traunce, which the Pagan king perceiuing, and dreading some wurs inconuenience would ensue: he tooke her vp in his armes, and carried her thence verye gentlye and modestlie into the Queenes Chamber, where he declared the occasion of her feare, and continued to them the discourse of those three before named kings: which the Ladyes heard very attentiuely, and while the Pagan bethinkes himselfe where to breake off his discourse, heere thinke I good to conclude this Chapter.

CHAP. 17.

How king Floridamant hauing assembled his Councell, to receiue aduise from the cheefe of his friends, and well wellers, concerning what was best to be done in this necessitie: After he had heard the diuersitie of their oppinions, in the end hee set downe his rest on the councell of the wise and aged duke Candior of Normandie.

KIng Floridamant was all this while in Councell, to be aduised (as I tolde yee in the former chapter) how hee might best delay the assault, and by likelye meane deferre it, till the expected ayde from Gaule and Spaine were arriued. In which councell, there were many of different and contrarye oppinions, for some thought good to temporise a while without fighting, vntill they should bee somewhat stronger, to endure so sharpe and cruell an assault as the Pagans intended against them; because in very deede they were ouer-weake, to withstand so fierce a charge as

was

was like to be offered, for if they mishap should be such (as the issue of fightes and battaylesis most certainlye vncertaine) to be vanquished; and the Cittie taken in the assault: the hopes for supply so long attended, were vaine, and would profit them nothing after they death, for hardlye should they become conquerours after they were conquered, therfore the counsell of stay was reputed most honest, and without anye shewe of cowardise, of these doubtfull meanes to chuse one.

Or else to sende a Letter to the heads and chefe of the Pagan Campe, that if twelue such knightes as they could choose in they Campe, euen the very brauest, whereof they had great number, (except the mightie king Tryphon of Scithia) durst enterprise the combate in field enclosed, with what armes they would, against king Floridamant, and eleven such knights as hee would elect for his companie: if in this combate they happened to be victors, king Floridamant would obey the decrees and conditions by them before proposed, satisfyng whatsoeuer they demaunded by their messenger. But if the conquest turned to king Floridamant and his Knights, the Pagans should bee bound to deliuer their foure valiant prisoners, and depart with bag and baggage, not offering iniury or displeasure to any Christian. For assurance of which conuentions, the prisoners on eyther side should remaine ostages, vntill the vanquished had obeyed to such order as they had thus promised by inuiable oathe.

Otherwise they were of opinion, to enforce the Pagan prisoner write to them, with whom his credit was so great, and whose losse the king Grandowin greatly feared, because extreamely he loued his Children: that so sone as they began to assault the cittie, the Christians were minded cruellie to put them to death. Others humors were far contrary heerto, and said, it were more necessary to incite the Corsean king, to write rather of a treatie of mariage with the kings

daughter,

daughter, beeing become so amourous of her, as hee could gladly elect her as his wife: and while they should consider on this marriage contract, it might bee a meane of peace with Floridamant, for the citie were to stand free from the least mollestation, untill he secretly understood his fathers will, whether it should be a marriage or no, for which season they might lawfully require a truce or peace: thus feigning some forwardnes in themselues to this marriage, they should induce the Pagan to write the more willingly. But King Floridamant, who had his spirit more vigilant and diligent about his affayres, and for the conservation of his honor: reputed these opinions (of the king Grandilaor and Ferrand, with the princes Andregor and Lampridion, who had thus conferred together) to be very straunge and farre from reason: wherefore he addressed himselfe to graue olde Candior of Normandie, desirous to vnderstand if he were so minded or no, whereto the Duke thus answered.

My Lord, I haue euer esteemed and accounted the kings Ferrand and Grandilaor, as also the Duke of Suffolke and Counte of Norfolke, to be hardy and couragious knights, aboue all in your court, their deedes haue beene verye generous, and full of high chiualrie, as by very honourable effects they haue beene manifested to me: but I tell yee boldlie in their presence (seeing it is your pleasure) without any flatterie, that if I had not good and certaine knowledge of them, you, had not mine eyes seene in many encounters, the vndoubted proofe of their valour and vertue: hearing them of such opinion in these affayres, questionles I should think them other then they are, or else dreading doubt of the danger wherein we now are, hath made them vse these tearms of feare, rather to the losse of your estate, so many good citizens, women and young children as are in this citie, then any hazard of their owne persons. Therefore whatsoever euiltie thereof, I may not follow their aduise, for many reasons and considerations, which if it please you, and all the

assistants

assistants, to listen with fauourable eares, I will describe vnto ye. In the first place, if we should write to our enemies and desie certaine of them in combate against like number of ours: they presently would conceiue opinion, that all our strength and valour consisted in the hardinesse of a dozen men, which might be easie for them to discomfite, and no other hope remaineth now for vs, where as yet hitherto they haue beene of a farre contrary minde. For howsoeuer redie they bee to assayle vs, they imagine vs to bee a greater number then we are, as ye may gather by so many likelyhoods lately seene, disposing their campe into so many and sundrie places, all to hinder our issuing forth vpon them by day or night: the rest in farre fewer number, are ranged into foure strong places, where best they may make their assault. Farre better it is for vs it should bee so, then otherwise, because if all were prepared to assayle vs, wee should finde our selues more seuerely vrged, then we can do by the order that is now disposed: and this will fall out for certaine, if we write to our enemies as these good Lords haue aduised.

Secondly, whereas we would combate, as it is thought meet to be demanded, or else we will do or can do nothing: if we be so desirous of the combate, twelue against twelue, we shall bring our selues into very great hazard. For it is necessary to consider, as euer more in taking things at the worst, that be it wee gaine or we loose the battaile, we shall be sure euery way to loose: because in a case of diuorce, we can take no assurance of our enemies faith, they hauing none at all. Nor are we anywise to trust the ostages prisoners, which wee haue in our custody, by reason they haue more of ours, whome we prize and esteeme more then they doe or can doe theyes. Besides, they haue among them diuers nations of contrary humours, some of them (against the will of the rest) may run vpon our twelue knights, and murther them, if they bee not miraculously preserued from

so great daunger: and which is more. what likelihood can be gathered, that twelue men, the cheefe and head of a sufficient great and puissant armie, should go forth to hazard the liues and libertie of so many persons? where being united together within the Cittie, and fenced round about with strong walles, me thinkes, that although all the Pagans in the world were heere assembled to enforce vs, yet should it be impossible for them. And before they can get entrie, their siedge will be longer then that of Troye was, but we must make no issue out vpon them, neither will we any way condiscend to this combate: for it were but a faint harted trick, if they should take vs at our word, and we our selues afterward glad to refuse it, this for euer will redounde to our great shame and dishoneur, which we should rather flie then the lesse of our liues. Now for constraining the Pagan prisoner to write any thing, thereby to respite and delay the assault, I mislike that more then the other, because wee ought not vse any force or violence against a prisoner, bringing him to write any matter whatsoeuer, that may be preiudiciall to him or his: least that our enemies who are Pagans, and in whome yet neuer appeared any sparke of loyaltie or fidelitie (as well we knowe) should intend some thing against our prisoner, both hurtful vnto them and vs, and I am of opinion, that if vnbeleeuing men containe such good thoughts, as to vse kindnes and benignitie towards their enemies, the like or more ought appeare in them that professe faith and loyaltie. Wee then that follow the right path of a farre better religion, should thinke on no fraude or trumperie whatsoeuer, and muchlesse in time of a kinde intreaty, as we promise to our prisoned enemie, vnder hope whereof, they whom our enemies detaine of ours, may receiue such fauour from them, as they shall not be compelled to doo any thing hurtfull to themselues. Let vs not then constraine him to any thing against his will, much lesse let vs speake or once open our mouthes concerning any marri-

age.

age, in that it will séeme a matter incredible to our enemies that against the lawes of our religion, wee would permit the marriage of a Pagan with a Christian: this were but to make them verily beléeue, that we would altogether forsake our God, and the confidence we haue hitherto reposed in him, to worship with them their false gods, Iupiter, Mahomet, Mercurie, Phœbus, and such like idols as they reuerence as things celestiall, so altogether to take their parte: whereas we ought not shew them the least attaint of our thoughts, but firmely to stand on our strong faithfull foundation toward God, who euermore hitherto hath maintained and preserued vs, by his exceeding mercie and inuincible power. And still in his goodnes we ought to resolue with our selues, that all the Bethulians were in times past deliuered, from the miserable and cruell sledge of cruell Holofernes, onely by power diuine, that for their deliuerance raised vp a woman, who by vndauntable stomach cut off the head of their chéefest enemie: we by the like or greater miracle, by his supreame and diuine grace shall be deliuered from our proud enemy: for whose destruction if our strength be two feble, or in any sort wanteth, hee can by his will, if we firmely trust in him, make flye on them againe, eyther the Sword of Gedeon or Aioth, or else an other Iudeth, to ouerthrow and exterminate theyr dayes altogether, so to preserue and deliuer them that abide in faithfull obedience and trust, continuing theyr firme hope and assurance onely in him.

We sée by many holy and sacred misteries and examples wherewith the diuine and holy Scriptures are plentifully stored and furnished, from how many euils and mischiefes he deliuered, and miraculouslie preserued the Children of Isaack and Israell, that trusted in his goodnesse and mercie, and did with hearts full of deuotion and penitence, call for his helpe and succour in theyr calamities and afflictions: let vs then altogether trust & hope in him, beleeuing that he

is at this present, euer hath beene, and for euer will bee, as gracious and mightie as then hee was, and in this hope let vs take paine, valiantlye and couragiouslie to defend our selues: for if we had this resolution in vs, though we were as men without hart or power, I am perswaded that fiue hundred of vs, shall suffise to impeache the entrance of our enemie, were they as many more in number as they are, and so attend the arriuall of our hoped succour, albeit they should tarry a moneth yet longer in comming, when he had concluded in this sorte, the wise and vertuous king Florida-mant, seeing by exteriour demonstration, that the greater part of the assistants, approued and highly praysed the good councell of the valiant elde Candior Duke of Normandie: fastened on his words, and thus began himselfe.

My good friends and faithfull companions, if in this aduersitie (which hath not beene common with you or mee) I haue some cause of greefe, to see my selfe in extreame danger of loosing my estate and Crowne, which my predecessours by their prudence and vertue, so long time happilie preserued in all flourishing ioy and prosperitie: yet withall I haue now great reason to comfort my selfe, seeing so manie vertuous and valiant persons embarqued in the same ship, readie to run in like danger of fortune with me, who not onely by effects of their prowesse and valour lets mee apparantly behold, what good will they beare to the conseruation of the christian weale publique: but likewise do tranaile by their aduise and councell, to acquaint both mine eyes and certaine experience, with what zeale and affection they embrace the conduct of mine estate, and howe forward they are for the preseruation of all Christendome, which would bee meruaylously shaken, if this woefull distressed kingdome (at this instant the most flourishing estate of all, where the name of Iesus Christ is knowne, honored and glorified) should fall as a prays to the enemie, that seeke to ruie and vtterly ruinate it. For which I ought chéefely to

thanke

thanke my God, as vnfaynedly I doo, that he hath not altogether forsaken mee in this calamitie and miserie: but not onely hath prouided me of such valiant knights and warriours as you all are, but withall hath lent me men so skilfull and aduised. It seemeth then good to vs, that according to the discreet councell of Duke Candior of Normandie, that we should not seke to delay, but patiently endure the enemies assault, when they shall againe with their great number giue the attempt, and without any shew of feare eyther without or within the Cittie, carrie no regard of our liues or goods, but imploye our selues together manfully, to defend so iust a quarrell as this for which we fight. And let vs so behaue our selues, that our enemies may know, how the Lord God that assisteth vs, and can (if hee please) take our cause in hand, is onely mightie, and will by vs deliuer such testimonie of fortitude to the worlde, as neither is in their power, or the false idolatrous Gods which they worship, to doo, in vaine then shall they thinke to feare vs, or worke such ruine to vs as they intended. In this deliberation each of you take courage, and be assured, that whosoeuer dyeth in hardie tryall of this fight, it shall bee a perpetuall honor to him in this world, and a glorious life to him in the endlesse world, where he shall triumphe of the fayrest victorie. Neuertheles, I doo not reiect the good councell and aduise of the king Ferrand, Grandilaor, and others agreeing with them, whereto if we see vrgent necessitie constraine vs, wee may vse them as we find cause, to vphold our selues on our feete what euer betide vs: marie yet we must not so slightlie condiscend thereto, without further feeling of our enemies fores, then as yet we haue, without any great disaduantage. Hauing thus sayd, ech commended and agreed on this resolution, and so rysing from councell, they went to prepare to withstand the assault, as hereafter ye shall read, because we must here conclude this chapter.

CHAP. 18.

How the Pagans prepared themselues to the assault, and how the besieged Christians endeuoured to the contrarie, in such sorte as they withstood it valiantly. How many braue bickerings passed betweene them, compelling the Infidels (after a great slaughter, and on needfull occasion) to withdrawe themselues toward their Campe and Pauillions.

When the Christian Princes departed from Councell, it was almost night, and hauing a lighted Torche before him, as is the manner in the Realme of England, the chiefe and most noble Lordes went to the Pallace royall, to take their repast in companie of their king, who feasted and entertayned them very magnificently, the better to encourage them in their deuoire. After supper was ended, the guarde and watch was orderly placed, each one of the inhabitants thus resoluing, rather to die the death, then turne their backes on their enemies, or forsake the walles, which they manned and fortified very strongly, expressing inuincible and neuer quayling courage. The princes were there in person, and hauing in the night made sundrie roundes about the Cittie, to see if any thing wanted in any place: they found all well and in good disposition, through the carefull dilligence of the Captains by them appointed, and according as the king had commaunded for conduct of the footmen. This doone, they departed for a while to the pallace againe, that they might take a little rest, because they had beene so ouertrauailed the dayes before. Not three houres or thereabout had they slumbringly slept, but they heard a great rumour and noyse throw all the Cittie, the cause whereof was, in respect the enemies had

had sounded their drums and trumpets, giuing an allarme to the inhabitants: wherevpon king Floridamant arose immediatly, and all the Christian kings and Princes that bare him companye, who betoke themselues as the king had appointed, to the rampiers and contremures seuerally prouided, to withstand this first and sudden assault of the Pagans. And as each one was come to his place of charge, they found the enemies alreadie verye busie, against foure places of the Cittie at once, with their Trepans, Rammes, Bricolles, Scorpions, Crowes, with other such like engines and instruments for warre, wherewith in those times they vsed to breake and beat downe the walles of Citties, they saw withall, that they had erected their high terrasses and platformes, that commaunded ouer the Cittie, and on the principall of these Fortes, they had builded certaine bastils or houses of wood, wherein were placed great store of Archers and crossebowes, who standing with assurance against the enemie, might greatly iniurie such as attempted to impeache the escalade, appointed in these places and for this purpose. For this cause likewise, they commanded their Elephants to be brought neere the wals, to the number of two or three hundred, carrying little castles of wood vpon their backs, wherein also were a number of Pagan Archers bid. Besides, many were appointed with Torches and burning firebrands against the gates of the cittie, where they layde store of pitch barrels, to make the fire the sooner do his office when the gates being burnt downe, they entered in great number the citty, while the christians was busied to defend the breach or scaling of the wals: when king Floridamant & his hardie knights had notice hereof, with all speed they hasted thither. where seeing how they laboured against the high bulwarks of earth, with their pioners they made new fortifications vpon them, casting such deepe trenches round about, as should hold them rougher worke then the wal had done: for the trenche was made with speciall good soldiours

well

well appointed, to like wise were the other places, where the etralave was prepared, and the vaulles with the Elephant Castels like wise wood, because these being the most dangerous places, they were fitted with so many parte fighting men, as some were left to stand against the gates where the fires were made. King Floridamant causing those deepe trenches and ditches to be made, thought on another politie, wherby to give the enemie some hope, and so intrap them: further off he made like trenches to the former, and by cunning devise to cast spread them with earth, as though they had beene passable without perill, neither could they discerne any ditch to be underneath, but as if earth had bin taken thence to build the other bulwarkes: underneath this subtill couerture, the earth was very thick rammed with those pointed stayles, such as fastened the barriers without the gates, leaving but fewe there to make resistance, but prepared to other places that required more need.

These things thus disposed, the enemies proceeded to beat vaulte the bulwarkes and countenances, where led the way the fierce and cruell Brandiliant, accompanied with the king of the fortunate Iles Solazard, Cambarell, Phagouroff, as also the king of Nuarie Zorlot their brother, with the giants Brifard, Rogemont, and foure other of exceeding stature and greatnesse, having with them their owne Souldiours, and they that belonged to king Angrafort, all purposing to die, or else to beaten they Lay from imprisonment. All these, after the warlike engines were erected to overthrow the walles, did beate downe so great a part thereof, as an hundred men might passe in on front, without elbowing one another: so marching in at this breache with sounds of Drummes and Trumpets, which thundered a fearfull and what alarum, they shouting and shriking like wise with so loud a noyse, as they that opposed themselves to rent this barbarous multitude, durst not parted they were to surprise so with feare. But they that were within the trenches, so

the

the number of three or foure thousand, being armed with pikes and steeled cuirasses, so worthily stood vpon their defence, as the Pagans, who verily thought they had won the vate alreadie, were quickly repulsed from that bridge, for king Grandilaor, Andregon and Lampridion, who were appointed to kéep that quarter with their companies, drone them so furiously ouer the false rouered déepe trenches, as at this first onset fell therein wounded, slaine and spoyled, fourteene or fifteene hundred Pagans together, that were striuing who should be formost before his fellow. Whereat the fierce & proud Brandillant chafed out of measure, when being followed by the foure Pagan kings his vassalls, all armed in most goodly glittering armour, each hauing in his hand a mightie mace, garnished with sharpe steele pointes round about: they lais vpon the Christians so outragiously, as the port of the bulwarke (whereinto the greater part ran for safetie of their liues) being too straight to let them in so fast as they came, there were presently slaine out-right in this brunt more then fiue hundred men. Brandillant pressing still on, by chance met with the Citizen Boaster, who had charge of a braue armed troop in the citie, and such was his inconquerable courage, as hee woulde resist this bloudthirstie pagan: but he receiued such a stroke on the creast of his morion, where stood a faire plume of snowie white feathers, as pearcing quite through the harnes into the brains there this worthie citizen yélded vp his soule to God: which when his sonne beheld, the sole heire of a inestimable wealthie patrimonie, which his father had heaped together for him, beeing a valiant young man and of towardly hope, he was ouercome with such extreame rage and despight, as in the heate of his furie (not dreading the force of this stout pagan) he ranne vpon him to reuenge the death of his father, and hauing his sword drawen in his hand, he deliuered such a stroke at the pagan, as (but for the goodnes of his shielde) had deeply wounded him, for the sword point brake of with

out

ont ante further harme to his enemie, but the Pagan ma-
king no account of the blow, thought in scorne to passe by
him, and medle no more with him, whereat the yong man
called Dondye, was so vexed, as running againe at Brandis-
sant, he challenged him the combat: when the Pagan ente-
ring into his wonted choler, made him die the same death
his father had done before, and holding on his waie in this
furie, made such hauocke of the Christians, as before hee
wold take a breathing, he slew fiue & twentie or thirtie men
of marke, as braue and harde as any in that companie. A-
garos a man of authoritie, who before time had lead men in
the warres of the deceased king Brandismel, was slayne as
he fought verie couragiously: for after hee had killed foure
pagan souldiers hand to hand, himselfe fell downe deade by
the hand of this cruell and bloudie Brandissant, so likewise
did Taurisque the braue leaper and the good drinker Grimos
albeit he tooke not his drinke well inough that morning, for
which it seemed he was so sorrowfull in dying as he yelded
forth his sonle at his mouth, crying for some friend to bring
him his liquor. With them bare companie Anglidor King
Floridamants player on the Lute, and the valiant knight
Andron, who somtime had bene his page, with his two bre-
thren Iumeaux Marcis, and Mausis, goodly young men of the
wealthiest familie of the citie of London, greatly affected to
the good and safetie of the weale publique, and so many be-
side of spectall name, as if I shoulde particularly sette them
downe in writing, it would require more time than in this
case is limited me. For if the fierce pagan put ten to death,
his followers apparantly imitated his valour, in murthe-
ring seauen or eight at the least, according as they coulde
possibly reach them. Salazard with his semitarie smote off
the head of Norgal among others, and quickly did the like to
Longaro his cosin, two lustie young men that were counted
the best fencers in all the city, but albeit their running and
fencing made a fine shewe in their masters hall, it little a-

nailed them against the vnspeakable force of this valyant pagan, who (with them) sliced through the middest of the bodie. Aridos the good pilot, hee that in his life time had made many a voyage on the mediteranean sea, and from one side to another rutte through the wyde Ocean, to places whereof the names were neuer knowen. Cambarel cruelly slaughtered Medion a gallant disposed yong man of the city, whose father dying not long before left him abounding in goods and riches, and he beeing at libertie was affianced (for her beautie and vertue) to the fairest maide in the Citie, albeit she had no great dowry to her mariage, because her parents and friends were verie poore. But this rich citizen beeing amorous of her, minded soone after to marrie her, and so liuing in this sort, the pagan gaue end to his loue and hope at one stroke, which so grieued Calnis, the brother germayne to fayre Auciana, the affianced maide, as hee woulde do his deuoir to reuenge his death, but Cambarel clefte him with his sword from the head to the middle, and likewise slew Amiris the good Archer, as he was sending an arrow toward the fierce Carlot, who on the other side made great spoile of the poore christians: but he had not the leasure to do it, for as he held vp his brasill bow, tipt at ech end with good harts horn, he fell downe dead to the earth, the blacke bloud issuing abundantly out at his mouth, through the cruell stroke the pagan gaue him with his sharpe skein. Not contented herewith, he smote the cunning cooke Piscan on the flank, he that was inuente to keepe the keyes of the gate of the Cittie, to open them in the morning and shut them at night. and so the good souldier fell dead to the ground: as likewise foure germaine brethren, who all that morning had laboured to repulse the enemie, and in the first shocke slew halfe a dozen with their guilded pikes, but when they brake through the throng, to raine the puissant Phagorroff backe againe from the breach, all striuing to auenge the death one of another, were in the ende slaughtered and spoyled in the breache

by the right hande of this strong pagan Phagotroff, which proued very great losse to the christians, for besides that they were descended of verie noble race, their vertues and hardy courage made them worthie of high commendations: the eldest being named Flexin, the next Lampos, the third Artaxe, and the youngest Robly, the foure sonnes of the loyall knight Tamiris, who long time serued king Floridamant, as master of his houshold, and died in his seruice, as now dyd his foure sonnes, in the defence of their lines and Countrie. King Grandilaor that beheld this bloodie slaughter and merciless murdering of the Christians, as well by these accursed pagans before named, as also the fire huge gyantes belonging to Angrafolt, became so passionate in his thoughts, that to reuenge the death of these foure hardie Gentlemen, he put himselfe forward against the pagan Phagotroff, who thinking to handle him as he had done the rest, was greatly stonned, when he sawe and knew by effectes, that hee had made an ouer-rash account, the christian prince laying such strokes on him with his sword, as in his life he had not felt the like. Wherefore looking more narowly to his busines, he couered himselfe with his shield, whereof Grandilaor had pared aware a great part, and so began between them a verie hot skirmish, for if the christian prince was valiant and redie to armes, the bold pagan was no lesse than he. Which Zarlor and his brother perceiuing, ranailed so greedilie to kill this Christian, as in despight (seeing the conflict wher they were dealing) they made great haste to runne furiously vpon him, but one of the archers sent an arow to right from off the rampart, as entering the sight of his helmet, was soundly planted in the midst of his ie, whereof hee felt such greeding paine and anguish, as hee fell downe in the place where he stood. Now is it not to be doubted but they Brandiffant and his three brethren were offended hereat, for yet must thinke their anger to be such, as they laid on the Christians ten times more rigorously than they had done before.

And

And the Christians withall were so ioyfull to see one of their enemies chiefe pillers layd along, as they began likewise to vse better defence for themselues then they vsed before, and the rather, for that the princes Andregon and Lampridion (being neere on the other side) had slaine the two fierce Gyants Astort and Morganos, beside Rogemont that ventured first on the wall in the escalade, was by them so shamefully repulsed, as falling plainly from the toppe of the breach, he was glad to get him out of the fight, with his leg broken in the middest: but the multitude of the pagans was so strong and valiant, as no man was able to stand before them, for as they sought to carrie awaie the wounded body of Zarlor, the Christians strone to take it from them, in which attempt so many of them were slaine, as they were faine to let them haue the pagans bodie halfe dead, and flie for assurance of their owne lives, behind the rampart and bulwarke, which their labourers had raised before the breach, and thence to repell the enemies accesse was verie difficult. When king Floridamant noted this, he went and came from one breach to another, euen where he perceiued the fight to be most vilent, and where a souldier might best set himselfe to worke: and holding his bloudie curtelax in his hand, seeing Grandilaor, Andregon, Lampridion, and others sustaining the assaut on the five halfe vanquished, the breach being well neere lost, such was the strength of the pagan kinges, princes, and abounding multitude, he cryed and called out vnto them in this manner.

Ah valiant knights and warlike men at armes, in whome glorious shineth such valle and valour, as vnder the vault of heauen was neuer seene the like, now experience telleth, that your vertue is inuincible, and albeit the force of our enemies is most great, ye haue notwithstanding such vnconquerable spirites, as the dread of death cannot cause ye to forget your deuoir, seeing so long since taught, that it is much better to die with reputation, then liue with shame

and disgrace, which your generous mindes coulde neuer
brooke, to haue your fame by the verie least meane impay-
red. If already you haue and still doe giue such terrour to
to the enemie, as he knowes not whether he were best for-
take the place or no, deliuering you the signall of victorie in
yielding you his roome: assure your selues that whatsoeuer
countenance they shew of hauing the better, yet in this ex-
tremitie they know not to which of their Gods they should
now make recourse. Courage, courage then most valyaunt
knights and Gentlemen, boldly beate backe these heathen
Infidels, I am here yet whole and sound to giue ye succour,
and as your faithfull companion will liue and die with ye,
not budging one foote from it, till either I be slaine or you
conquerours.

These wordes pronounced most cheerefully, and com-
ming from so great a personage, gaue such courage to the
Christian princes and souldiours there about him, especial-
ly when they sawe the king not only in words, but in deeds
endeuoured for their assistance: as king Grandilaor so rude-
ly charged the pagan Phagotroff, who was climbing vp the
top of the rampire, that he made him come tumbling down
againe so doutibly, as he miss but verie little of breaking his
necke: neuertheles hee was so astonied and amazed, as his
brethren and the rest which sawe him thought he had bene
dead indeed. This so inflamed their chiefe leader Brandis-
fant, that he ranne with such furie on this valiant prince, as
but for the speedie helpe of king Floridamant he had there bin
slaine out right, for he had giuen him such a peisaunt stroke
with his mace, as shiuering his shield had almost broke his
arme, and withall made him fall in a trance to the ground,
which the pagan well noting, ranne to finish vp the last ac-
cent of his life, but king Floridamant steped before him with
stiff force and hardie courage, as the pagan feeling foure or
fiue good strokes well and lowdly layde vpon him, was
glad to honestly to gette him gone, and forsake the rampyre

which

which he thought to haue wonne, shewing notwithstanding in his recoyling some valour in his countenance. Nor can I compare his retire to anie thing better, than that of a mastine dogge, that being well bitten with the teeth of one that is stronger than himselfe flyes without making semblance thereof, shewing his teeth for all that to the other that nipt him.

Thus threatned the pagan, when he was forcibly beaten from the rampire, shewing back his mightie mace with same meane ostentation, as though he would kill him that durst presume to followe him. But king Floridamant, seeing that it was not so expedient to followe him, but rather to helpe Andregon and Lampridion, who were strongly beset by Salazard and Cambarell, as also a great number of their companie, against whom (taking so fewe soldiours) it was very hard for them to make resistance; therefore presently he directed his course thither, leaving the pursuite of Brandissant, and there so bravely behaued himselfe, that the Pagans perceiuing their cheefe leaders driuen from the rampart by the renowmed Christian king, the trenche therefore won again, and many Pagans of name lay welteing in their blood; they also tooke themselues to flight, when cast the olde Grandowin, who galloped with his Chariot hither and thither, to courage and harten his men, remembring how forward they were at the first, and now to flie with such manifest disgrace and shame, especially the king of Tauariffe his sonne. Howe now Brandissant, quoth he, I thought the place where you wonne, giue the first assaulte, should be our vndoubted entrance into the Cittie: yet now to the contrary I behold, that you who should serue for an example of valour and hardines to all our hosse, are the first that inciteth them to take their tales, thereby to desist from so faire an enterprise, begun and hitherto continued happily. If thou turne not once againe with thy men to the place frō whence thou camst, I will flatly say thou art not my sonne:

neuer more will I thinke on thee or Angrefolt thy brother, if thou reuenge not their death slaine by the christian king, and this notorious iniurie offered vs. Retourne thou then with speed vpon the enemie, without hope of euer comming backe againe, except thou bring the victory and spoyle of the Christians, for this is the date or neuer, that must neeues make vs Lordes and commaunders in this strong and well defended citie.

The magnanimous Ynsuell flouting himselfe, and hauing with meruailous grauitie deliuered these words, his cruell sonne (followed by all his people at once) moued with exceeding rage and anger, retourned so furiously vppon the Christians, as quickly made them retire within their rampires, for to behold their sallying forth, right backe again, and eager pursuit of their greeuie enemies, I may well resemble it to the merciless dates of the Caspian sea, when the waters driuen by violence of the windes, beate fiercely against the hard rockes, wher with it is enuironed, when the flames and billowes extreamly thereon rent asunder, confusedly returne back again into the midst of the sea whence first they went, and then retouching fresh vigour, against and againe runne on the rockes more violently then before, so by going and comming still in vaine, their labour is bestowed to no purpose or benefite. In like manner beganne and continued this new assaut, both by the scaling ladders, and in at the breaches, as I will declare vnto ye in Chapters following tending to such matter. For the crueltie of this war hath made surprised me with such griefe of minde, as I am constrained a while to discontinue the history, to speake of matters more pleasing, e which deliuer more sweetnes.

CHAP.

CHAP. 19.

How the Princesse Porphiria being in a castle neere to Constantinople, ouercome with amorous thoughts, and desirous to heare some tidings of her louer, importuned the Phisition Sagibell, to tell her by his Magicall art, whether he were aliue or dead. Which he could not then performe, albeit hee put his skil in practise, and withdrew his spelles, by reason of farre geater knowledge that remained in another. Notwithstanding, soone after she had some consolation concerning her loue.

I stand in doubt I shall bee greatly blamed, for hauing so long time let sleepe in silence, the successe of the amourous sicknesse of the most fayre Princesse in the world, whose history I haue discontinued since the first chapter of this booke, by reason of the sundrie occurrences of warres, combates, and other aduentures, which compelled the flight of my pen to take that course, following a path not before trode or beaten, as ye haue read: wherein if your iudgements finde that I haue anye thing fayled, I will at this instant make amends for that fault (if you account it a fault in so dooing) and speake so sufficiently thereof, as you shall haue reason to be contented. If then I forget not the scope of the story concerning her, and the last speeches we had in her cause, it may appeare, that we left her from the Cittie of Constantinople, in a Castle of pleasure or recreation belonging to the Emperour her father: where (to finde some ease for her amourous passions, though shadowed vnder the change of ayre) the Phisition Sagibell wrought the meanes of conducting her thither, as yee haue read in the place before expressed. You remember likewise, in what

equipage she was conuayed from the Court, and howe the Emperour kept the treasure and wealth of his Empire in this fortresse, impregnable of anie force: it remayneth then that I tell yee at this present what happened while she sojourned there, and howe her inflamed desires were satisfied.

It behoueth then that ye call to minde, how earnest she was to know certainly, whether her louer were aliue or dead, for which without ceasing, she importuned her phisition, who, as well ye remember, was excellently skild in the magique art, whereby she should present to her eyes aliue or dead, the figure of him that gaue nouriture and some contentment to her amorous thoughts, that she might perceiue in what estate he was. The skilfull man ouercome with importunitie, prepared himselfe hereto, and setting downe such parcels as he thought meete for the purpose, hee founde by rare chaunges and contraditions, that onefarre better experimented in this arte than himselfe, medled with the same matter, whereby he was compelled to leaue his enterprise imperfect and without effect. Wherefore, if while the more skilfull partie called on the spirites, he should haue offered to proceed further therin, the double strife would haue growen to such a confusion, as the smoke and tempest woid haue ouerthrowen or carried awaie the castle, wherein the princely maide for her pleasure was inclosed. To preuent so great an euil, the phisition gaue ouer in time, and withdrew his charmes in verie good season, declaring the occasion to the princesse, why he could not then bring to passe the thing she so much desired: yet assuring her withall, that very sone she should heare newes in some sorte, for which shee shoulde not tarrie anie long time, which proued true and came to passe as Sagibel had foretolde, for fifteen daies after or thereabout, one night when the princes was in her chamber, disposing her selfe to go to bed, betwéene the hours of nine and ten at night, she heard a voice, and the sound of a lute, agree-

ing together so mellodiously, as among humane creatures was neuer heard sweeter harmonie. And the song seemed to come from some ship on the sea, at the foot of the castle, wher then was appointed the princesse chamber, the effect of which song hereafter followeth.

The song which the Princesse Porphyria heard in the Castle.

THou that within this tower art inclosed,
And with loues cruell fire all inflamed:
This night giue rest vnto thy languishing,
For Atropos as yet mindes not thy murdering.

The destinies as yet consent not to end thy life,
But these blacke houres must change of amorus strife
And thou before thy death shalt see quite ended,
The strong assaults of griefe that hath offended.

Loue vowed not thy ruine though vnrest,
A golden shaft he shot into thy brest,
He for whom thy hart indures this sicknes,
Triumphs not ouer thee, for thou art mistres.

Euen with the selfe same shaft his heart is maimed,
And plungd in sharper woes, of ioyes restrained,
Faire maide then grieue not, this is but loues finger,
They finde rest in the end that loue and linger.

Cease, cease thy teares, complaintes and sorrowing,
Cherish vp thy beautie fairer than the morning,
A daie will come if thou wilt giue me credence,
That of thy loyall loue thou shalt haue recompence.

Angelicall beautie, liue thou then happily,
And in thy sweet passions vse no extremitie.

As the fayre Porphyria heard this Song begin with such an harmonious sound, shee was so rauished in conceit, as suddenly she ran and layd her head to the windowe, albeit she was neere disrobed of all her garments; to see by the siluer shining rayes of the Moone, that this calme night shewed her bright and argentine face ouer the vauts of heauen, who it was that sung and played so sweetly, and came at such a late houre to performe the same. But she could not discerne any thing, neither beneath the Tower or anye where else, whence this most heauenly voice might proceed: onely she vnderstood the dainty melodie of the Lute, and the voyce very perfectly which sung the song, the wordes whereof made her the more to muse, in that they better agréed with her disposition, then the sweetnes of the musique could giue her pleasure. Especially when she heard what consolation this vnknowne musitian promised, by the certaine hope of a future felicitie, of séeing him whose sight she so extreamely desired: and withall, to haue her amorous torments assuaged, which she had so long time impatiently suffered, and still enflamed her heart with most ardent desire of his loue.

Heerevpon, hauing forsaken the windowe, and being laid in her bed, all this night she could thinke on nothing but this song, imagining with her selfe, whence this knowledge of her passions should proceed: then againe confuting this opinion, that the matter contayned in the Song was most certaine and true, deliuered from some person that bare her intire affection, and who (for her pleasure) was thus sent to comfort her amourous oppressions. Then remembring how little assurance was to bee reposed, in the credence of such things as carryed no apparance of true similitude, nay hauing any foundation on reason: shee was on the other side carried away with contrary opinions, verily beléeuing, that this was but some charme done by her Phisition, or else some other appointed by him, to make her

hope

hope well in her despaire, and fraud her selfe with vanitie in the middest of her misfortune, wherein shee was so soundly and surely intrapped, which humour bearing stroke with with her mors this waie then the other, inforced her to renue her former tears, sighs and intire lamentations. Then tourning againe to remember what seine dates before her phisition had tolde her, how ens better skild than hinnselfe, had contraried his spels, whereby hee sought to giue her assurance of her desire, comparing this with her first conceiued imaginations, she then remained as doubtful as before. These diuerse and contrarie opinions thus hammering in her head, made her tosse and tumble euerie waie in her bed, with great impatience, and these amazous tormentes compelled her to breath forth such vehement sighs, as her cousin Harderina (lodging in the same chamber) hearing her, demanded what new disease had so surprized her, for if shee would beginne againe her former immoderate vexations, especially at such a time when shee had so greate occasion of comfort, by so late good hope prophetically delinered in the the song, which with such admiration they had heard that night, in her opinion she was well worthie to be chidden. Ah sweet cosin, answered the princes, I know not what I shuld sais or thinke therof, this is my fears, that I haue heard, are but abusing charmes to deceiue me withall, to make me in the meane while lie languishing before my death, which euer yet and at this instant I earnestly wish for, for no way can I deuise to turne my selfe to finde my rest, wherefore I praie thee deare cosin, tell me faithfully what thou doest imagine of all these passedenents, thinkest thou there is not some bodie in the world, that by one meane or other either generall or particular, can tell me what shall happen, or else shew me some proofe, wherein I may repose some trust, how little so euer it bee Madame, quoth Harderina, I wyll tell you truly what I thinke, agreeing with what I haue often heretofore heard.

There are certaine maligne spirits deceiuers of men, which through the meanes of many Magitians, as there are to many: by a thousand illusions know how to deceiue such as are lesse skild in that wicked science, making them to beléeue what is not, and so deceiue the sences of men or women, in causing them to credit certainly what they heare or see. The charmes of such doo vanish aloaye like smoake, hauing no more vigor or efficacie then a dreame, so that the memorie thereof is as soone lost as found. There are other called bonum Genies or good angels, which by the meanes of good persons that call them in better sort, they are commanded in general what shall happen, without specifying any thing: and to reueale perticulerly what is to come, which kinde of spirits I haue oft times heretofore heard, that a Fayrie of good disposition, dwelling in some parte of great Brittaine, which place of her abode could hardly yet be found: she (I say) knowes very well howe to command them, as also so skilfully to imploy them, albeit by diuine permission as is said: that shee makes them goe whether she thinkes good, locking them vp as shee list, and by charmes enclosing them in the bodyes of beautifull damosels, that inuisibly are transported hither and thither, wheresoeuer she commaunds them, and not else. These damosels are called Fayries or Nimphes, one whereof perhaps by her commaund, did sing the Song to giue you some comfort: which if it were so, then verely I dare credit whatsoeuer the song disclosed: but for better knowledge of the trueth heerein, it is necessarie that to morrow you conferre with Sagibell, to vnderstand what in this case he will reueale to yee. Trust me Cosen, answered the Princesse, I thinke ye may say true, for one reason which as yet you touched not, and whereof I was remembred by your speech, to wit, that my knight (if mine I may name him) is commonly called the Fayrie knight, because a certaine fairie (as he said) dwelling in the same countrey you named,

and

and called Ozyris, as hee tolde vs, had giuen him nourishment, and sent him likewise to my fathers court, there to receiue his order of knighthood. But how can that bee? (quoth then the faire princesse againe, continuing her speech and doubting what reason should moone her so to do) what knowledge hath she of me? can shee tell whether I loue or no? who should reuealeit to her? or how can she diuine on matters so strange? this can neuer enter into my vnderstanding.

Well Cosen, well (replyed Harderina halfe a sleepe, wearyed to heare her talke so long in a place appointed for rest) sleepe, sleepe with patience, till to morrowe your phisition tell yee other newes, and in the meane while trouble not your selfe: but sleepe, and let mee doo the like, for all this night you haue not suffered me to enioy any quiet. When the faire Virgin perceiued her cosen and deere companion weaire of talking, shee held her peace, and soone after falling into a slumber, shee soundly slept vntill the next morning: when the sunne arose a little more earlye then shee did, on which day what happened, yee may read in the Chapters that follow hereafter.

CHAP. 20.

How the Princesse was instructed by Sagibell, in the meane to know who sung the Song at the foote of the Tower: and how shee had resolution, in what shee most desired to know and vnderstand concerning her loone, euen as shee would, by the meanes of the Nymphe Aegle, seruaunt to the Ladye Ozyris.

When

Hen the cléere morning had shewed her fayre countenaunce ouer the world, according as she was wont, and alredy the steads that drew Phebus chariot, were wel entered on theyr waie, to deliuer abroad the splendor of his looks, the beutifull infant Porphyria awaked, dreaming yet on the past song, and of the conference she had wyth her fayrie cosin and faithfull companion Harderina, especially of that she tolde her, for resolving of her doubt, which was, to talke with her phisition Sagibel, and vnderstande his opinion. For this cause with all spéed she sent her damsell Marcella to séeke him, at whose command the good and skilfull phisition fayled not to come presentlie, and being entered the chamber, finding the princesse as yet in her bedde, she discourses vnto him all that happened the night past, as also what speeches passed betwéene her cosin and her, in selfe same manner as ye read in the Chapter going before, earnestly intreating of conclusion of all, to tell her his aduise, what might be gathered thereby, most agréeing with truth, if by his art it were possible to comprehend anie matter certaine, wherunto the phisition (hauing noted euerie circumstance) thus answered.

Madame, I cannot presently giue ye anie certaine resolution in these affayres, but betwéene this & mid day I will promise to tell ye truth of all, or at the least shewe yee some meanes whereby to knowe it. I praie thée then my good Sagibel, quoth the princesse, that thou haue precise regarde of the promised houre, or sooner, if it may be possible, go then and in the meane while vse what diligence yee can best deuise, that at least I may knowe what thou conintrest, or else canst gather of this wonderfull accident. Immediatly the wise man departed the chamber, to compasse that she had inioyned him, for the intreates of the mightie are strict commandements to the meaner sorte, and so diligently herein

he

he behaued himselfe, that at the houre promised, hee fayled not to seeke his Ladie and mistres, finding her new risen from the table, hauing this daie dined with her cosin Parderina.

Not a little ioyfull was she to see him, being perswaded in her thoughts that her phisition had nowe promised some cataplasme for ease of her griefe, but the consolation she receiued was not verie great, for the phisition onely tolde her, that he could know nothing of all that was done. But his spirites had reuealed vnto him, that to knowe the certaintie in this case, it was expedient, that the Ladie which desyred such sound knowledge in these affayres, shoulde one nyght plaie on some instrument, and sing at the same windowe where shee heardе the song before: withall, the effect of her song should be, to aske the voice that had song what it was, the wordes and circumstance whereof should agree with one that he had made for the same purpose, which he opened and gaue her, and shee learned it by heart euen at that instant. Now albeit the princesse receiued not such intire comfort, as then presently she expected, yet were her passions somewhat mittigated, and this song serued her as a pastime all the after noone, to learne the lines perfectly and sing them well, as before night with her lute she made it agree verie excellently, and so cunningly could she touch euerie string, that both the dittie and musicke fitted passing well her owne desire.

When the daie was passed, and night approched, for that she could not with patience tarrie till the next morrow, she tooke her Lute in her hand, and going vnto the windowe, playde thereon meruailous sweetly, and shaping her swéete voyce to the daintie melodie, sung this song as heereafter followeth.

The Princesse Porphyrias Song to the voice.

TEll me celestiall voice,
if thou be that voice pittifull,
Which didst replie Narcissus plaints,
from out the woods so mercifull.

And playing so pleasantly,
vpon the skilfull Thracians instrument,
Wouldst with thy pleasing harmonie,
Aswage my amorous languishment.

When shee had song these two verses of this song, shee sodainly ceased, according as the Phisition had instructed her: to trie if the voice woulde beginne againe to aunswere as immediatly it did, playing and singing in the verie same tune shee dyd, and thus was the voyces answere.

The voices answere to the Princesses Song.

VNderstand thou faire Princesse,
that I am not the Goddesse called Eccho,
Who did resound Narcissus death.
through all the world with sorow so.

Nor am I as thou thinkest,
Orpheus that skilfull man of Thrace,
But I am Aegle the faire Fairie,
whose golden locks hang dangling down her face.

This made the Princesse continue on her song, being verie glad that she had answere to her interrogations, and desirous to haue further matters tolde her, in her song she beganne againe in this manner to question with the voice.

Porphy-

Porphyria.

I would not wish more happines,
fayre Nymph, but to haue knowledge of thee,
As thou canst soundly giue assurance,
herein then shew such fauor to me.

And likewise grant mee but to know,
what most afflicts me with contagion,
If he liue whom my thoughts obey,
and makes me feele this loue passion.

The Nymph Aegle replies.

I am the voice of Nymph Aegle,
the faire and faithfull damosell,
Vnto the great and powerfull Fairie,
that vnderneath the heauens doth dwell.

One daie when thou doest sleeping sit,
hard by a streaming fountaine,
The rest shall be reueald to thee,
that will asswage thy amorous paine.

Porphyria.

Alas then wilt thou flie from me,
Nymph with faire eies behold me still,
And as thy promise let me know,
what els my tender heart will kill.

So breaking off her song in this sorte, the voyce would make her no more answere, which made her more curious and full of greefe then before: yet remembring what the voyce had said, that one day when she should sit alone by a Fountaine, she should be satisfied in the rest of her demaund and finde ease for her languishing: hérvpon seauen or eight daies together continually, without letting scape any day, she went & lay downe in the Arbor or Garden, where were thrée or foure verie stately fountaines, and by euery one she sate downe to sléepe, that she might haue answer according as the voyce had promised: but this desire was so profoundly aduanced within her thoughts, as shee could compasse no way to forget it, and the remembrance therof compelled her as far from sléeping, as she most coueted to come néere it: for the restles humors and fantacies did so continually beat vppon her heart, as would not permit her the very least moment of quiet, and the neerer shee approached the Fountaines to fasten on a sleepe, the more did these abounding vexations torment her. Hauing continued in these insupportable agonies the space of eight dayes, the length and vehemence of which trauaile had so ouerweakened her, as now she wexed heauie and desirous of sleepe: one day when she least thought hércof, she was sequestred from all her companie, and going alone into the Garden (not perceiued by any one) about the time of midday, she sat downe by a Fountaine in the midest of the Garden, which was round beset with daintie Arbours and Cabinets of Gessemine, Rose trées, with floures and hearbes of all sorts that smelled most sweetly: and excellent pure water flowed from the fountaine, being brought thither in pipes from foure fayre Griffons, that were placed in the foure corners of the Garden, which was equall square euery waye. On the side of this fountaine sat downe the young Princes who had past so many nights without receiuing any rest, and thinking none but to slumber a little, shee slept there

soundly the space of two houres, without knowledge to any of her attendants what was become of her: each one supposing verily she had lockt her selfe into her chamber, as diuers dayes before (to couer her melancholly) she was wont to doo. It so happened, that about the verye latest moment of her sleeping, the water of the Fountaine murmured and made such a mightie noyse, as oftentimes the troubled sea dooth, when beeing stirred with great and most tempestuous winds, the fierce billowes beat either against some stonie rock, or driues vp the sandes against some promontorie, aspiring vp sharpe pointed from the middest to the top: by meanes whereof the faire Infant quickly awaked, dreaming that she was not by the side of so faire a fountaine, but on the raging of the sea, which leaped against the foundations of the Castell wall, and mooued very extreamlie as seemed to her.

Being thus awaked, the bruite of the water ceased, and appeared before her the most fayre Nimphe Aegle, resembling in beautie not any humaine or liuing creature, but rather some deitie or matter celestiall: such as comming neere the newe built walles of Carthage, appeared to the Troyan prince her sonne. Euen so this beautifull Naiade seemed to the princely maide, who at the first sight of her was somewhat astonied, doubting whether she should take her selfe to flight, or tarie still there, or whether this apparition was to encrease her heauinesse, or bring her comfort. This being well perceiued by the fayre Nimphe, who hertofore had amazed the most assured by her presence: she spake to her in this manner: bee not afrayd (O princesse of rare vertues, and the fayrest creature in the world) nor be abashed at my vnexpected appearing into your presence: for I am the Nimphe Aegle, seruant to the fayrie Ozyris your knights Nurse: by her commaundement, and according to the promise I made ye eight or nine daies since, I am come to see in this place, not any way to astonnish or affright ye

but rather to bring yee ioy and consolation, by giuing yee certaine resolution in a doubt, wherein yee haue liued and languished too long, to wit, whether your knight bee dead or aliue: to acquaint ye moreouer, with what I knew of his birth and valour.

The young princesse lending eare attentiuely to these words, cheered vp her thoughts, and tooke great pleasure in contemplating the excelling beautie of this fayre Noiade, as also to heare her sweete and gratious language, the sence and substance whereof concerned the thing shee most desired, and was so agreeable to her. So that longing to heare what the Nimphe had promised, after a modest and ciuill kinde of questioning, she thus made answere. Whatsoeuer thou be (most faire and gentle Nimphe) right welcome art thou into this place, and albeit thy presence at the first brought me some cause of feare and displeasure: yet now on the contrary, I am as glad and ioyfull heere to beholde thee, for reasons as yet knowne to thy selfe: and this ioye I receiue by sight of thee, procured the motion and change thou didst note in my countenance, not any fright, feare, or discontent, receiued through thy beeing with mee. If then thou hast any thing to tell mee, chefely concerning that I most desire to know, I pray and intreat thee againe and againe, by the reuerence and respect thou beareſt to thy Sisterre Ozyris, by these Fountaines and waters which thou haunteſt, and wherein thou delightest vsually to bathe thy selfe: likewise, by the loue and honest affection thou beareſt my knight, by the golden tresses of thy haire, with the sweet fauour and beautie I beheld in thy face: I coniure thee not to depart from me, vntill thou hast tolde me, who and what the knight is that beareth name of the Fairie, of whence hee is, where and in what part hee is at this present, and whether he be dead or liuing. Tell me withall, if his affection be such to me, as mine is to him, what ease, helpe and comfort, or loue like recompence, I shall receiue in the end

for

for the loyall affection I beare him, and what will bee the issue of both our loues.

Thy knight (faire princesse) answered the Fayrie, is a man vertuous and of great valour, for he is the onely valiant, and most accomplished knight in all perfections, that at this day liueth, or heereafter shall liue vppon the earth: in like manner, his exhortation or originall hath he receiued from a father, that is the most hardiest king on earth, no one so worthie to weare a crowne royall; namely, the great monarch Floridamant of England, a prince so perfect and accomplished as may be possible. He being in quest of sundrie strange aduentures, which long time hee exercised as a knight errant, onely to acquire honor and reputation; left his quéene conceiued with childe, wherof she was deliuered in the absence of her king, and he was nourished vnder the wing and gouernement of the quéene his mother, vntill the age of seauen or eight yeares: when the skilfull Fayrie Orzyris, who all her life time bare good affection to the king, in the countrey where shee her selfe inhabited, as also to all that were of his familie: knowing and perceiuing well by her skill, that if the young prince should remaine long time in his fathers Court, hee was destined to incur some great misthaunte, euen no lesse then a strange and cruell death: by sudden inuention she found the meane to rob her of her Son, in respect, that if this misfortune had happened, it would haue prooued such an exceeding homage and preiudice, not onely to all the realme of great Brittaine, but likewise all the Christians that liue vnder heauen neuer felt the like, in regard of the good they should one daye receiue by him. Hauing then so subtilly gotten him away, I will not tell you how or in what manner, because it requireth too long a discourse, and I intend to tell yee but breefely, the principall points of this historie.

She nourished and brought him vppe long time, in her riche and opulent Fayrie, which is as huge & big or rather

greater

greater, then the wydest kingdome in the worlde, and there enstructed him in all good manners, vntill hee was of able age, and capable to beare knightly armes, whereby hee might discouer what hee was. She prouiding him of all things necessarie for a knight, chusing and appointing him as her loyall and faithfull seruant, she being the wisest and most faire princesse liuing, as likewise he is the most valiant and vertuous knight in the world: directed his course, sending him as thou knowest and canst very well testifie and witnesse, to the princely Court of the great Emperour thy father: where what befell him, thou canst tell without my reporting, as also thou wast not ignorant of his departure.

What is become of him euer sithence his departure, would require a long time to recount, & the houre of my departure so vrgently presseth me, as at this instant I can tel thee no more, because I am constrained to leaue thee. But to morrow, at the selfe same houre I came this day, I promise to returne againe, not onely to tell the rest of his aduentures, but to let thee see them all, to thy great pleasure and contentment. Hauing thus spoken, the Nimphe plunged her head at the first into the water of the Fountaine, and so departed, where likewise I meane to finishe this Chapter.

CHAP. 21.

How the Nimphe Aegle (by the will of hir Mistresse Ozyris) appeared another time to the fayre Porphyria, and made her for to see her knight in a Sphere, withall the aduentures that happened to him, since the time she saw him last.

THe nymph Aegle hauing thus left the company of the yong princes, she remained very pensiue, & more desirous than before, to know the newes of her knight, for now shee would faine bee acquainted with what the nymph had concealed, not contented with what was alreadie reuealed, though in some sort pleased, by knowing that her part and amorous desires aimed at no meane or base obiect, but so fortable and worthy as she could make choice of. And verie certaine it was, that in those times there was no Empire or monarch more renowmed, nor anie king or Christian prince more esteemed, then was the realme of great Britaine, & the worthie king Florídamant. For his predecessors and himselfe had inlarged and augmented their gouernment further a great deal then the continent of England, not onely by their force and prowesse, but likewise by their swéte curtesie and benignitie, so valiant did they euermore shewe themselues to bee, as also humane and affable withall, yet al this aduantage was not sufficient to satisfie the princely maide, but rather vrged her to more pensiuenes and impatience, vnderstanding him to be of such rase and originall, whome before shee reckoned and estéemed but as a simple knight arrant: now prooving to be of so high extraction and great birth, hauing seated her affections in place of such dignitie, she remayned still doubtfull whether he were aliue or dead, for so long absence might verie well raise great and vehement suspition thereof. Here vpon she withdrew her selfe secretly into her chamber, beeing much discomforted and verie passionate as before, musing and pondering much more profoundly on her new and fresh conceites, than on the discourse of the beautifull and fayre Nymph Aegle: and albeit shee was indifferentlie comforted thereby, yet made shee no signe or semblaunce

thereof to her cosin. Wherefore when the night was come, thinking in the darke shade the nymph would come again, and resolue her in the rest of her desires, shee went to the window and song the same vearses which the phisition had taught her, but all was in vaine, for shee heare no song but her owne, nor anie mellodie but her Lute, which made a heauenly concordance with her voyce. Fayre Aegle was deafe for this night, and woulde not make answere to her musicall questions, but when the morning was come, and the rising Sonne made shew of a new daie, the young princesse hauing enioyed no rest all that night, amorous imaginations had so carryed her thoughts to and fro, with wishing and rewishing for the midde daie houre. So wearing awaie the tediousnesse of the time with as greate patience as he could, at the last she got her againe to the same fountains side, where she had slept the daie before, and the nymph Aegle retourned thether agayne while the princesse slumbered, making lyke noyse as at the first she dyd, wherwith the Infant awaked, marie not so much afrighted as earst shee had beene, but beeing verie gladde to beholde and see the fayre face of the demie goddesse, from whome shee hoped to receiue greater consolation then shee had done in the daie before.

Now the Fayrie had brought with her a sphere, or for your better vnderstanding, a bowle of peeces of engrauen wood, made in forme round lyke a sphere, wherein appeared the whole vniuersall world, how it was inclosed, and namely the earth, with all the prouinces contained therein, painted after the lyfe, and in such sorte, as within it ye might beholde the mouing of the starres of heauen, the foundation of the massie earth, the cloudie ayre, wyth the flure and reflowing of the Ocean, the other seas, and the riuers that binde in the earth, with all the roundnesse of the terrestriall globe.

These things might there be discerned with more pleasure

sure and contentment than they can conceiue that trauaile farre, to see a little portion or many particulars, of that which this fayre Nymph shewed at one time to the Infant Porphiria. For you must vnderstand, that hauing drawen from forth the siluer waters of the cleere fountaine, this diuine peece of workemanship so lately named, shee opened a certaine little couerture, which was expressely made to discouer all the rest within, at the opening whereof she vsed these wordes to the princesse.

I will let thée see heerein, vertuous and fayre princesse, all the vniuersall world, presented in the proper lyke and figure, wherein likewise thou shalt beholde thy knight, and all his aduentures, which happened since his departure from thee.

Speaking these wordes, hauing opened the doore that was aboue, wherein was contained the figure of heauen and the starres, shee parted in three partes the rest of the round Globe, which when the princesse sawe discouered, she cast her lookes on that parte where Affrica was represented, and questioning thereof with the fayre Aegle, shee sayde, I praie thee beautious Nymph, fauour me more than with the bare sight of the wide world, before thou shifte to anie other place, tell mee what parte is this heere first described, inhabited with people so barbarous, grosse and rusticall, because they come first to sight, and tell mee what desarts these are, that nourisheth and breedeth such infinite number of sauage and cruell beasts. This is that part, answered Aegle, which is named Affrica, defenced on the one side toward the Sunne rising, with the greate flood, which ye heare with such mercilesse noise come from the mountaines, and by seauen chanels or mouths runs into the bosome of Thetis, called Nylus. On all the other sides it is enuironed with the sea, especially on the North coast with the Libique sea, whereon the auncient people called Penes, exercised many outragious and extreame piracyes,

these people came of the Phenicians, that passed thether with Dido Queene of Carthage and the Grekes, more ancient than they that passed thether before with Hercules. And to tell thee in few words (least I should offend yee with tediousnes) with what other regions this land is inhabited, ye must vnderstand that Ethiopia is this which ye see rising from the red sea, and butting on Arabia, neighbouring towarde the North with the Egyptians and Lybians, who were so called after a man named Aethipos, that the olde Pagans sayde was the sonne of Vulcan: he being the first King, all the region tooke the name of him. Then may yee discerne here on the other side, the habitation of these olde idolatrous Egyptians, a verie fertile region, which in elder time was called Aeria, and since thé cleped Egypt, by a brother to Danaus so tearmed. On the west is the limitrophing borders of Cyrena, towards the east it beholdeth Palestine, and on the North side the mediterranean sea. The great citie which yee see in this region so well seated, with walls so ancient, and whose proud pallaces are now like an olde ruined mazure, is the ancient citie of Thebes, whereof Amphion is sayd to taie the first foundation, and the king to whom Andromache, wife to the hardie Hector, was daughter, being there slayne when cruell Achilles entered to sacke and spoyle the towne, murdering seuen of his children, the future hope of his genealogie: since which time this ancient citie hath continued in such bad estate as ye beholde it. But afterward in this other place was builded by king Alexander the great this other beautifull citie, the walles whereof are not so ancient as the other, and according to the name of the edifier, it is named Alexandria. See on the other side in the same prouince the citie called Abiros. Here is proud Babylon and the citie of Memphis, renowmed by reason of the meruailes which Queene Semyramis there builded and erected.

This other greate Citie and wonderfull strong, whose

whose walles are more fresh, as also beeing more newlye builded then all the other: is the famous Cittie of Hieropolis, so called in former times, but at this present is named the graund Cayre, which signifieth a Fortresse in Egyptian language: in this Cittie lies the king or Soldan of all the countrey. Heere in this parte, not farre from the people I told ye off before, that made many courses and piracies on the Lybian sea, I meane the Phœnitians, which are deuided into sundrie regions and prouinces: for heere are the Namasones in Lybia and Marmarica, drawing towards the kingdome of Barcha neere the sea: there are the Guydanes their neighbours, who in steed of bearing bucklers with them to the warres, doo carrye the Skinnes of Cranes.

On the other side, countenauncing the fennes Trytonia, are the Machlides, that weare theyr hayre (as there ye may beholde one) long behinde, and are powled short before, contrary to these other called Anses, who as the painter discribes, weare theyr hayre long before and shorte behinde: theyr daughters once a yeare fight extreamely with stones, in honour of the Goddesse Minerua, whom they adore. The great mount ye see not farre from this place, is the mount Atlas, whereby the neighbouring people are called Atlantide, which in the greatest heate of the day rayle the sunne, and curse it with many iniurious speeches. They that are on this side, hauing the right side of their heads shorne, and raced toward the left side: are called Maxes, that vsuallie paint their faces with Vermilion, and make vaunte of theyr distrent from the Troyans: as likewise do these Zigantes, being not farre off from them, and they liue by the flesh of Apes, wherwith the countrey meruailoussie abounded.

These other abiding in the region of the Hesterues, are named Troglodites, otherwise Megauares: people that being dead make no account of buriall, but after the decease

of buriall, but after the decease of one of them, they vsually come to the place where he is, and being loden with stones, in a great laughter they throw them at him, and so returne againe without any thought of death. To these are next neighbours the Hylophages and Spermatophages: the first are so called, because that for their nourishment or food, they climbe and craule vp Trées like Squirrels, and there cutting the tender sprigs or branches, feed thereon and so liue. The other are so named, because they substantiate their bodies with many sédes of hearbes, that come from the midst of the marishie grounds in that soyle. There hard by likewise are the Ceneigdes, which inhabit the woods, and sit sleeping all the night on the trées, like birds. Furthermore concerning such like people, in the deserts of Lybia, are the Acridophages, which liue onelye but by Locusts that are found is those deserts, and thereupon they are so called. In the extreame being of this part of the world, are the Cynanimes, so called by the Greekes in their language, but wee call them sauage men. They which yee see heare all naked, are the Ichtipophages, and there is the place called the cape of Gardafuni, which lookes on Arabia named the happie, where are the kingdomes of Adel and Barnagas. In this marshie Ile, neighbour to Aethiopia and mount Atlas, named Hesperia, within the Tritonian fennes: dwell the Amazones, women experimented in feates of warre, and which onely manage the affayres of theyr common wealth, without men medling or inhabiting among them. I leaue all the other people that are heere in this parte, because it would be ouer long to expresse their names, life, manners, and dayly behauiour: wherefore passing ouer this straite, that seperates the great Ocean from the Mediterranean sea, called Gibaltare or Hercules pilles: is the kingdome of Hea, which hath on the north side the Ocean and Athlantique sea, and toward the middest, the great mount Atlas I shewed ye before: there also are the kingdomes of Phez,

Marocco,

Marocco, Alger and Thunis, inhabited with terrible and cruell people, and foure Pagan kings all cosens germaine: in their possessions they are very mightie men, well skild in warring against their enemies. But aboue all, the king of Phez is of high resolue and meruailous valiance, as I will declare to yee anon, when seeing the place where hee is at this present, I shall recount the meruailous aduenture happening him, so long since forborne: and with speech of him, I will likewise tell ye tidings of your Cosen Pharisor, who is as sorrowfull as you for the wante of his companion. They that gouerne these two kingdomes of Marocco and Alger, the one named Phoas, and the other Orontes, haue led in their conduct a great multitude of the barbarous people of their Realmes, to fight against the Christians, and with huge numbers of Pagans expressely assembled, seeke to destroye the great and famous Cittie of London, wherein king Floridamant father to your knight, is cruelly besieged, in danger to loose his life, or see himselfe disposest of crowne and kingdome: but God of his infinite goodnes will prouide some helpe, that such misfortune shall neuer befall him.

As for the third, vnder whose lawes and commaundements they of Thunis are gouerned, to wit, Adylas: I will likewise tell yee more when we meet him in place where he is, to let ye know what he hath doone, and then shall yee see him that yee are so desirous of. But before this may bee doone, or you attaine to behold the long wished place: I will tell yee what these fayre Ilandes are which you see within the Sea, the neere bordering neighbours to this kingdome.

Knowe then that these are the Hesperides, otherwise called Fortunate Ilies, and commonly Canaries, not such as many haue esteemed them to bee, they are greatlye abounding in Dogges: but much more fertile are these aforesayde Ilies abounding in store of Reedes or Canes,

from

from which are made the Molasses Caffonades, and then Sugars most fine and swete, abounding in very great quantitie. The people there dwelling, are subiects to a puissant Pagan king, who at this daye swayes the scepter thereof, named Brandissant, that chased thence sometime Argamor, the cruell father to foure sonnes, who succoured king Brandissant in so dooing, because the king had promised to each of them, one of these Iles for his part, and seuerally they should weare kingly crownes, such was their greedie desire to reigne before they? fathers death, whose life was more offensiue to them, then any infectious disease to a healthfull time: according to which promise, after that Argamor was then chased thence, who afterward dyed with extreame greefe: the foure brethren, the eldest whereof is named Salazard, the second Zorlot, the third Canibarell, and the fourth Phagotroff, had the gouernment of the foure isles by them demaunded, conditionally, that thence-forth they should be obedient to the commaundements of great king Brandissant, and liue as they ought vnder his Empire: all these are likewise at this instant in these warres, with great multitude of the Islanders, and other neighbours that owe tribute and allegeance, in company of the father to Brandissant, who hath engirt with siedge (as I told ye before) the famous Cittie of London, assisted by many more whereof ye shall know anon. Thus breaking off, the faire Nimphe Aegle turned and quickly ioyned together the seperated partes of the sphere, which beeing| inuisibly closed and brought into the former estate, and casting it into the Fountaine, immediatly she threw her selfe in after it: promising to returne againe vpon the morrowe, to tell what remained to the princesse of Constantinople: shee sitting still by the fountaines side, ranished with ioy and delight for seeing such rare sights, and heere because the day continued no longer, wee gaue great reason to knitte vp thys Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. 22.

How the Nymph Aegle appearing againe to the Princesse Porphyria, daughter to the mightie Emperour of Constantinople, made her see in her Globe of all the world, all that which Asia containeth, and in what part her louer was, with the pursuit of his high enterprises and aduentures.

Great pleasure tooke the fairest of fayre Princesses in the worlde, daughter lykewise to the most mightie Emperour in the worlde, to beholde so many notable thinges in so small a time or space, as I haue declared to yee in the Chapter going before: and desirous to knowe with all what yet remained, the next day she failed not to be at the selfe same place, expecting the comming of the Nymph Aegle, who should discouer the deapth of her desire. In like maner, the Nymph, according to her promise, came in such equipage as she had done the dais before: and beeing there arriued, found the princesse willing to see the other meruaylous strange and artificial matters, that were diuinelyengrauen within the round bowle, where before she had noted so many singular things alreadie exercised. The fayre Nymph opened agayne that rare peece of workemanshippe, bidding her behold and touch with her finger all that which Asia contained, and first on the East side leading towardes the North, shee shewed her the seconde parte of the worlde, bounding on the great floud of Nylus, which watereth Egipt from Tanais to Mors maior or the Euxine sea, and one part with the mediterranean, but on all sides it is enuironed with the huge Ocean: in shewing whereof, the nymph thus spake. This land which ye see is named Asia, beeing of such gretnes, & comprehend such spacious circuit of ground,

as it containeth more vnder the name than doth Affrica or Europe. It is vnder a calme and temperate heauen, the soil being verie fertile and fruitful, in bringing forth all sorts of hearbs and plants, the reason thereof is, because it abounde-eth in all kinde of beasts. It is also inriched with golde and siluer, and such drugs as are not common to other countries or parts of the world: likewise with brasse, yron, wooll, saf-fron, and many other things of great price and value, especi-ally in this part of Arabia which is called happy, containing within it self an Ile called Pauchaia, vpon the gulfe of Per-sia, enriched with three fayre and stately cities, to wit, Dalf-da, Virracida, and Occeanida, wher the country is also most fertile, abounding in wines, myrrhe, incense, gold, siluer, lead and other like mettals, which by particular ordinaunce, the Pauchaians will not permit to bee transported foorth of o-ther countries. Assyria, that long since was named Assur the sonne of Sem, is this region which yee see heere, hauing the countries of India and Media towarde the East, and west-ward the violent floud that passeth by the citie of Rome, cal-led Tigris: about the midst it regardeth the soile of Susan, and by North it is neighbor to mount Caucasus, wher rain faileth, this countrie is watered by the riuer Euphrates, as Egypt in like manner is by flowing Nylus: not by naturall propertie or abounding of the riuer, but by industrie of the inhabiting people. Here southward to the Egyptian or me-terranean sea, ye see the country so far famed & renowmed, called Judea or the land of Chanaan, and here is Palestine, which by helpe of the floud Jordane is made verie fruitfull in many things for the life of man, especially in producing the best balme in the world. The middest of this region is so seated as ye may behold it, that neither heat or cold are at a-nie time more ouer vehement there, but the aire is so tem-perate, as the Israelites sometime imagined this to bee the land of promise, euen the same that God had promised to A-braham. In this countrie may ye see your sayre cosin Phari-

for the gentle knight, who disguised like a pilgrime trauayleth in search of your knight: but going on full of deuotion to worship the holy sepulchre of the worlds sauior, he hath met with the braue king of Phez who hath a little hindered his iourny. In speaking these words the nymph shewed the princesse her cosin Pharisor, in the same place where we left him, listning to the good king of Phez, who recounted his aduenture and genealogie to the holy hermit, by whose meanes he receiued cure of his wounds, which brought her such exceeding pleasure as is impossible to be imagined, much lesse to be written And had it not bene for earnest desire to sée her owne knight, she would haue intreated the nymph to tel her by what aduenture he came thether, and likewise what the king of Phez was: but she was so earnest in her owne affections, as hauing a while pleased her eies with loking on her cosin, she importuned the fayre nymph more pearcingly then before, to shew her speedily the place where her own knight was, being now in farre better hope of seeing him, then at anie time else: the nymph willing to satisfie her lõging, thus continued on her speech. If your affection drewe mee not so so soone from this Land, I would shewe yee therein manye more meruailous things, as the behauiour and manner of life, of the auncient Iewes that inhabit it, with sundrie other strange occasions, worthie to bee vnderstood: but beeing sent hither onely to accomplish your will, and to let yee see what is most agréable to ye, let vs passe on, viewing awhile the Medes and Armenians. The countrey of the first tooke name by one of the sonnes of Medea, and king Aegens that long since commanded in Athens: albeit it is more likely, of one Medos, sonne to Iaphet, one of Noahs children. This neighboring sea on the north side, is the Caspian sea, and that to the weast is great Armenia and Assiria: to the south are the Persians, of whom wee will speake anon, to the East lie the Parthians & Hircians: these people haue bin mighty in war, & had large domination ouer diuers regions

as credible histories doe amplie beare witnes: but at this present they are as slaues and subiectes to the mightie and puissant monarch of Persia, who in former time conquering their king, made them tributarie to his owne Empire. Marie that wil be but of slender continuance, by reason of your so farre famed beautie, which will prooue as hurtfull and dangerous to them, as Helens did to the Grekes and Troians: and seeing now we are in talke thereof, I will let you knowe both the present and future aduenture, and, by the same discourse, the fairie knight your long desired and wished loue.

The great monarch, who by his valour hath dayly augmented and inlarged his monarchie, shewing himselfe in all places inuinsible to his enemies, hauing by fortune seen the portraite of your beautie somewhat figured here the life became so surprised with your loue, as neuer since hath hee inioied anie rest, which was the cause (as not long since you vnderstood) vppon amorous constraint hee required you in marriage of the Emperour: but by reason of his difference in religion, the Emperour found an excuse to refuse the mariage. But notwithstanding this refusall, hee is growen so obstinate in his opinion, of inioying yee eyther by force or fayre means, thinking he cannot liue without ye: as hauing caused his people to change their religion, to take away the former allegation of refusall, he is departed long since from his kingdome, and commeth in person into this country, onlye to require ye once more in marriage: when if he be denied, he meanes to carry ye hence, whereof it behoues ye to take heed, for he will doe his vtermost, which, ye must persuade your selfe, will proue no little matter. But I hope my Lady Dyria will assist ye with such good counsell, as in the end ye shall escape the hands of this tyrant, who, to speake truth, beareth ye entire & earnest affection. But soone after, when once he might glut himselfe with the sweetnes of your loue and fauours, he will so hate and sette his heart agaynst you,

as the most foule woman in the world, shall be more fayre and amiable in his eye, then you, such is the nature of this barbarous king.

Now while hee trauailes in vaine about these affayres, he shall one day see himselfe deprived of Crowne and Scepter, which he will take from him, whom he seekes to rob of his greatest good for this effect. See heere alreadie his kingdome troubled and deuided, for you must note, that all the people in his realme are reuolted one against another, because some are good and true Christians, and others, onely gouerned by frenzie, fearing that their king will renye his Christianitie: & by force of armes seeke to reduce the rest to their former religion, which beeing vnable to compasse, such venemous hatred and despight is kindled amongst them: as hee must hope of another remedie for so great an euill, but euen a new mutation of the kingdom and gouernment, which will so come topasse in very short while. For your knight, who is arriued heere but lately since, shall prooue to be their new Lord and king, after he hath somewhat more trauailed and suffered for the same. Then when he hath brought all into quiet, and gathered the people vnder his obeysance: the destenies, who will not staye his course from better fortunes, in a place so strange, and with so few exploits of his vertue and prowesse: shall fill his sailes to more high desires, especially the incomparable loue he beareth you, and extreame affection in him, to let you see by effects, the seruice hee hath vowed to your diuine beautie: this shall make him (for some while) abandon this famous Monarchie, for euer to continue in dooing deedes of vertue, laudable and worthie of great admiration. During which pursuite, these people being againe reuolted, he shall send hither a strong and valiant knight, who with great paine and trauaile, shall once more bring these mutinous rebels vnder his awe and obedience: his name, by reason of his generous acts and braue enterprises, shall be

knowne from this part to the other side of the Pole, yea, hee shall bee so redoubted and feared, as the verye hardiest shall tremble to heare him spoken of. In this time, the Sophie, transported with amourous affections, not able to compasse his desseignes and enterprises: will unfortunately end his dayes, as your selfe in time shall perfectlye beholde. You tell me meruayles, answered the princesse, but yet yee shewe me not where the knight is, according to your former promise: of whom though I was desirous to heare, yet should I be much more pleased to behold him. Lady, quoth the Nimphe, it is as necessarie for yee to knowe all these things, as it is expedient for you to see him, because I am assured, both the one and other is agreeable to yee. Looke now then on this Orientall region, which is called Persia, of Perseus the sonne to Iupiter, and faire Danae daughter to Acrisius, king of the Argiues, according as poeticall fables testifie. Regard I pray ye, how many thousand armed men are heere assembled, euen for the occasion so lately expressed. See this famous Cittie called Tauris, neighbour to the Medes, a people not long since spoken of: behold how it is besieged by the Persian pagans, under the conduct of a young foole named Mauspasian, brother to the Sophie, hee that hath caused all this warre: behold into what extremitie these poore Christians are brought, that are within the Cittie, they haue nothing left but bread and wine to preserue life withall, and within these fewe dayes they were constrained, to feede vppon the flesh of their horsses, which was openly solde in the butcheries of this faire goodly cittie: yet will they not (for all this) yeeld to theyr enemies, or forsake their religion, but trusting in succour from aboue, because else-where they cannot expect anye, rather desire heere to finish their liues miserablie. See the other goodlie Cittie of Susa, almost in the same necessitie: looke on distressed Ariodant, the prop and sole comforte of the Christians, who by slight escaped the hands of Adylas king of Thu-

nis

nis, that would haue slaine him by treason, because he refused to yéld him selfe prisoner: On this other side, beholde the braue minded knight Taffinor, who halfe dead, by good hap fell into your knights company, and he healing him of a mortall wound, vnder takes to reuenge the iniurie doone him by the traitour Adylas: O inestimable, and (not to bee comprehended) curtesie, of so braue a knight. See I pray ye, with what deuoyre he begins to pursue this vengeance, see Argontes, the fauourite of king Adylas, dead on the ground vnder his horse, slaine by the valiant right hand of this renowmed knight, with many other of his complices, the most apparant and best knights in the host of Adylas. Not contented heerewith, note with what fierce hardinesse hee assayles the mightie pagan, euen within his Tents, notwithstanding he is accompanied with three or foure hundred knights of name and marke, euen the men of greatest valour in all the kingdome. It will not be long, before a hot and dangerous fight happen betweene them, from which Adylas shall not escape (by my aduise) so well as he weeneth. Thus spake the fayre Nimphe, and euermore as shee discourses, shewed all these things vnto the princesse, who was so ioyfull, seeing her knight represented to the life, as shee forgot to vse any more questions: and albeit the figure of him was very little, yet I thinke no tongue can expresse, no pen can set downe, neither hath any heart the power, to comprehend the surpassing contentment shee enioyed at this instant.

The historie reporteth it to bee so great, that she wept with conceit of ioy, and loosing all countenance, so far forgat her selfe, that she offered to run and embrace him in her armes, yea, to salute him with a sweete kisse: but her labour was in vaine, as well in regarde, that the workmanship and vision of all these things, were not to bee touched by humaine creatures: as also because the fayre Nimphe hindered her, and would not permit her to come neere it.

Euer

Ouer and besides all the former representations, she shewed her the dead figure of the Sauage Polyppe, recounting the wonderfull combats Gerileon had with him, in such sort as yee haue read in the Chapters treating thereof. The shape heereof was so fearefull to her, as shee became troubled in minde out of measure: which made the Nimphe quicklye remoone it from her sight, and plunging into the Fountaine water, vanished away, with whose departure we knit vp this two and twenteth Chapter.

CHAP. 23.

How the king of Phez recited his genealogie and aduenture, to the holye Hermit and the fayre Pilgrime, and howe the Hermit tolde him a goodly discourse, to confirme him in the Christian religion. Moreouer, howe Squamell was conducted by diabolicall artes, into an obscure Chamber hard by Auernus, hoping to bee healed of his woundes by the helpe of deuils, with that which happened to him afterward.

Crause the change of discourse, brings no lesse delight to the Reader, then the varietie of daintie diands contenteth such as take theyr repast: for a while I intende to change our purpose, leauing a part the amourous flame of the fayre princesse Porphyria, to come againe to the historie of the valiant king of Phez, not long since made a Christian miraculously, as yee haue heard before. To let ye vnderstand withall, according to the truth in writing of him, his genealogie and aduenture, whereof himselfe maketh recitall to the holy Hermit and fayre pilgrime, when hee was thereto by them required, beginning in this or the like manner.

ner. It is a long while since, that Artabaz sometime king of Persia, was enamoured on the fayre Queene Lyxandra, the most fayre and wealthie Ladie in riches and other goods of fortune, that was in those times: for vnder her obedience and Empire, as also her lawes, lived in flourishing prosperitie the people of foure opulent kingdomes, which are on the coast of Barbarie, to wit, Phez, Marocco, Thunis, and Alger. But Loue had not touched with selfe same shaft the hart of Lyxandra, as he did the hart of Artabaz, because the more earnestly he loued, the more mortally she hated: by reason, that in the life time of king Brunon her father, hee had dayly vexed him with warres, seeking to deprive him of his kindomes and Signories. For this cause he trauailed and molested him, as no man in the world could doo the like: so that being ouercome with wearines of the passed warres, Brunan finished his dayes, after hee had made some treatie or accord of peace with the king of Persia, euen then when first he began to loue the fayre Lyxandra: who having auncient mallice engrauen in her heart, continued dayly in resolution to hate him more and more.

Hereupon, she not willing to graunt marriage with the Persian king, nor to listen his solicitings, requests, and temptations, which stretched so farre as he could deuise, the perticuler discourse whereof were too long to rehearse: hee concluded to winne her by force of armes, and to renew the former warres against her, more sharpe and cruelly then euer hee did, against the deceased king Brunon her father. Which being thus pursued, he brought the vertuous princesse into such necessitie, as hee left her neither kindome, Cittie, towne, nor burrough, place nor Castell, but all was brought vnder his obeysance, and all of them spoyled, the strong Cittie of Phez onely excepted, wherein being constrained to shut vppe her selfe, he so long time continued the siege against it, as she was on the pointe of yeelding to his mercie, or else to take away her owne life: but then (by

good hap) a young Knight, so highly accomplished as any other whatsoeuer, arriued on the coast of Barbarie, euen as the Queene was in this great perplexitie, deuising with her selfe what she were best to doo: he hearing by the common report blazed abroad, what harde holde the Queene Lyxandra had against the Persian Tyrant, beeing brought so neere the place, by violence of the windes that droue him on the seas: was willing to succour her, beeing touched partly with pittifull affection, which the goodnes of nature had endued him withall, and partly prouoked on by fayre desire, to make appearance of his hardie valour, the fame whereof alreadie was bruted through most places in the world: but seeing at this first attempt, that his accesse and entraunce into the Cittie (so narrowly besiedged on euerie side) would prooue very difficult, the gates being ramd vp, and the walles enuironed with Persian men at armes. An indifferent while he deuised with himselfe, by what meane both safely and couertly hee might get entrance. Hauing some space considered hereon, the Historie saith, that he especially noted one side of the cittie wall, where the enemies had made a very great breache, to enter thereby on the morowe, vpon the answer Queene Lyxandra should returne to king Artabaze: and this breach was guarded by certaine armed men of the Cittie, while the Queene assembling her councell, should agree on some expresse resolution of answer concerning her submission to her enemie. The assaylants on the other side of the breache, were making banquets, passing away the time very merrilye, vnder certaine assurance, that now the cittie should be yeelded or taken, vppon their request within of composition: and well ye wot, that a Cittie comming to composition, is more then halfe taken. This was the cause, that the young knight beeing come neere the breache, and seeing they that kept it were verie carefull of their charge, hee softly whispered with them, to know by what meanes hee might enter the cittie, to haue

some

some speech with the queene Lysandra, concerning matters of importance that would prooue profitable to her, desiring them to let her vnderstand thereof, in that the cause of his comming thither, was earnest desire to imploy himselfe for her defence in this warre.

The Souldiers made him answere, that one should presently goe do his errand, and the Queene being aduertised hereof, was very glad, knowing well by his renowme and valour, that he was the gentle knight of the Flower, (for so was he called, because as then hee loued a Ladye named Florixa, in regard of whose name, he bare a Vermillion Gilliflower painted in his sheeld) a man so hardie and valiant, as hee was esteemed beyond all the knights of that time. Hereupon she gaue commaundement, that he should be let into the Cittie, by a doore that passed from her Castell to the Towne: marrie it was to be doone in the dead time of the night, and that so couertly or closely as might be: thus escaped the knight in, vnseene of the enemie, with his armour and horsse, and one Squire that bare him companie. In breeke, to tell ye what passed betweene them, the queene letting him vnderstand the occasion of this warre, the successe thereof, and the extremitie whereinto she was brought farre more in effect then the knight had heard reported: she fell downe on her knées before him, and with the teares trickling downe her chéekes, intreated him, to helps her both with councell and valiance, promising to deliuer vp all the treasure of her kingdome into his handes, if in this darkenesse he could illuminate them with some meanes, whereby they might escape the tyrants power, that forcible sought to make a rape of her, wherevnto before shee would condiscend, shee minded to murther her selfe with hir owne hands.

When the knight of the Flower had noted his words, desire of honor prouoked him rather to fight for her, then all her teares, & promised her, with the helpe of God, that dread

of death, should not with-hold him from defence of her case, which according to her recitall, seemed to him most iust and reasonable. In this resolue, he thus aduised the Queene to answer the Persian tyrant, that shee would not yeelde her selfe to his mercie, before shee made some proofe of the loue he bare her, and whether it were so effectuall, that he durst on the morrow aduenture the combate, against one knight, man to man, with what armes himselfe would choose. For one should be sent forth of the Cittie, armed at all pointes, whom if hee could vanquish, shee would condiscend to his will: but if the contrary happened, and he were conquered he should raise his siege, and depart with his hosse from before the Cittie, deliuering and restoring into her repossession, all such Citties, townes, borroughes, places, castels, lands and seignories, as he had taken and ruined, rendering and restoring to her likewise, all the treasure, which she spent to maintaine her resistance in warre, the valewe and summe whereof he should credit and beleeue vpon her owne oath.

If he pleased not to accept this offer, she was determined to kill her selfe with her owne handes, rather then shee would graunt what he so earnestly desired. This councell was so agreeable to the Queene, that presently she dispatched a messenger to Artabaz, to heare from him some answere or resolution. At this message hee did nothing but smile and laugh, in derision and mockerie (as it were) assuring himselfe of the victorie: and therefore accepted the Combate, with knightes ordinarie armes of Launce and Sword: but to make short, the knight of the Flower and hee combatted the next day man to man, in such sort and so long time, as (after a fierce and extreame cruell fight) Artabaz was vanquished, and yeelded prisoner to the Queene Lyxander: where by meanes of the knight of the Flower, he forcibly was compeld to performe the articles & conuentions, sollemnly sworne on either part before the combate.

When

When Artabaz was enlarged from the Queenes prison, conquered despight and despaire, hee ranne himselfe vppon his owne sword, to let out the loue he before had conceyued towardes the Queene Lirandza, who thus was deliuered from miserie and captiuitie, as also the violent furie of so great an enemie. Nor fayled she to thanke the yong knight the mean of her deliuerance, entertayning and feasting him there the space of a whole yere, euen perforce, as it were, causing him to tarrie with her, so that in the end she became enamoured of him, and but that she was a Pagan and hee a Christian, he being lykewise else where vowed, she woulde haue ioyned with him in marriage. And notwithstanding this prohibiting bond, both of the one and other religion, she could not suppoyt the extreame flame of this amorous fyre, but being ouercome with incontinencie, was constrayned to yeld her selfe in such sort, as she had knowledge of him almost against his heart and will. Howe oft this continued I knowe not, but within short time she was conceiued, which the young knight perceiuing, beeing wearie of these amourous sportings, which else where ought to be emploied, euen in place where his heart serued, one daie secretly getting from his companie, and being disguised, hee went whether the winde and fortune would conduct him. At his departure she was meruaylously discomforted, causing diligent search to be made for him in all places of her lande, as also far and neare to enquire after him, being willing to change her religion and become a Christian, onely to marrie with him, or once more to get him in her custodie. But hearing by credible reporte, that hee was the valiaunt Brandismel, king of great Britaine, who being a young knight, so chaunged his name and disguised his armes, hauing espoused his Florira, from whome came the king Florizdamant, of whome at this daie is held such account: she comforted her selfe so well as she could, and couered her fault so cunningly, that albeit shee was great with child, she married with the worthie knight

Florinor, at that day king of Armenia, in time of which mariage, by about seauen moneths after, she was deliuered of a goodly son called Florant, in remembraunce of the knight of the Flower his father. Within three years after she had three other sons, one named Adylas, the second Phoas, & the third Drontes, all found such hardie & aduenterous knights as euer liued in anie time.

Now because Ferramond was chased forth of Armenia, by Clarion brother to Artabaz, who was king after him and father to Mutinel at this time raigning, a long while he vexed him with warres, to recouer home his kingdome agayne, but he could not compasse what hee intended, vntyll Florant grew strong and able to carrie armes, who beeing assisted with a mightie and puissaunt armie, and especially imployed in these affayres, went forward with his charge so effectually, that hee expelled thence Clarion and his people, who grew into such vexation hereat, as seeing he was no longer able to stand agaynst him, he caused him traiterously to be slayne by foure Persians, who counterfeiting to come in embassage to him, with letters pretended from Clarion, as he talked alone with them in his chamber, they cruelly murdered him with certaine pistols, which for the purpose they had closely hid vnder theyr mãtles. Florinor who tooke himselfe to be his father, was so offended and grieued hereat, as a good father will naturally be for the death of so valiant a sonne, and sent Adylas his other sonne, with a far more great and stately armie, to reuenge the death of Florant his brother, but hee followed his busines so slenderly, that albeit he was a valyant knight, ther he left his life and his armie discomfited, which went so neere the hart of Florinor, that with conceyt of griefe he dyed, being then aged in yeres, as lykewise was his Mueene Lixandra, who carefully nourished me vp being the sonne of Florant, and endued with his name, as also young Adylas, bearing likewise name after his slaine father. In this time or soone after the

death

death of Florinor, Phoaz and Orantes, seeking after adventures as knightes arrant, prickt forward with desire of fame and honour, were slayne in two seuerall encounters by king Floridamant, beeing then as they were, a young knight, and following the same affayres. Eache of them left a sonne behinde them bearing their owne names, who lykewise remayned in the charge and képing of Queene Lixandra our grand-mother, shee verie carefully nourished and brought vs vp, especially me, to whome verie often shée discourses these accidents: and litle before her death (which rather was through age than anie other extremitie) she parted and diuided the kingdomes betwéene vs, appointing to one the realme of Phez. Adylas, Phaos, and Orontes, my cousins, had giuen to them the three other seigniories, to witte, Morocco, Thunis and Alger, wherewith wee all haue beene well contented, without quarrelling or falling at debate for anie cause whatsoeuer.

But we being as yet verie young, were assayled again by Mutinel the king of Persia, in reuenge of Artabaz death his predecessor, and would haue deprived vs againe of our kingdomes: but we so well defended our selues, as he couldé not altogether defeate vs of our right, but in regarde of our ouer young yeres, we premised him certayne yerely tribute, and obeisance or homage, when he woulde commaund vs to haue it done, which euer since we haue dayly continued, and in consequence hereof, being charged by him to arme themselues agaynst the king of great Britaine, in companie of king Brandissant and his brethren, to ruinate and destroie all christendome together, wee entered on the seas with a goodly great armie thitherward, and sayling merrily certayne daies in our voiage, we were surprized with a greate tempest, which separated vs one from another, in such sort, as I know not what is become of the rest. Well wot I, that my ship was wrackte against a huge rocke, and none saued alive of all that were with me but my selfe alone.

Since

Florinor, at that day king of Armenia, in time of which mariage, by about seauen moneths after, she was deliuered of a goodly son called Florant, in remembraunce of the knight of the Flower his father. Within three years after she had three other sons, one named Adylas, the second Phoas, & the third Orontes, all found such hardie & aduenterous knights as euer liued in anie time.

Now because Ferramond was chased forth of Armenia, by Clarion brother to Artabaz, who was king after him and father to Mutinel at this time raigning, a long while he vexed him with warres, to recouer home his kingdome agayne, but he could not compasse what hee intended, vntyll Florant grew strong and able to carrie armes, who beeing assisted with a mightie and puissaunt armie, and especially imployed in these affayres, went forward with his charge so effectually, that hee expelled thence Clarion and his people, who grew into such vexation hereat, as seeing he was no longer able to stand agaynst him, he caused him traiterously to be slayne by foure Persians, who counterfeiting to come in embassage to him, with letters pretended from Clarion, as he talked alone with them in his chamber, they cruelly murdered him with certaine pistols, which for the purpose they had closely hid vnder theyr mãtles. Florinor who tooke himselfe to be his father, was so offended and grieued hereat, as a good father will naturally be for the death of so valiant a sonne, and sent Adylas his other sonne, with a far more great and stately armie, to reuenge the death of Florant his brother, but hee followed his busines so slenderly, that albeit he was a valyant knight, ther he left his life and his armie discomfited, which went so neere the hart of Florinor, that with conceyt of griefe he dyed, being then aged in yeres, as lykewise was his Queene Lirandra, who carefully nourished me vp being the sonne of Florant, and endued with his name, as also young Adylas, bearing likewise name after his slaine father. In this time or soone after the

death

death of Florinor, Phoaz and Orantes, seeking after aduentures as knightes arrant, prickt forward with desire of fame and honour, were slayne in two seuerall encounters by king Floridamant, beeing then as they were, a young knight, and following the same affayres. Eache of them left a sonne behinde them bearing their owne names, who lykewise remayned in the charge and keeping of Queene Lirandra our grand-mother, shee verie carefully nourished and brought vs vp, especially me, to whome verie often shee discourses these accidents: and litle before her death (which rather was through age than anie other extremitie) she parted and diuided the kingdomes betweene vs, appointing to one the realme of Phez. Adylas, Phaos, and Orontes, my cousins, had giuen to them the three other seigniories, to witte, Morocco, Thunis and Alger, wherewith wee all haue beene well contented, without quarrelling or falling at debate for anie cause whatsoeuer.

But we being as yet verie young, were assayled again by Mutinel the king of Persia, in reuenge of Artabaz death his predecessor, and would haue deprived vs againe of our kingdomes: but we so well defended our selues, as he couldo not altogether defeate vs of our right, but in regarde of our ouer young yeres, we premised him certayne yerely tribute, and obeisance or homage, when he woulde commaund vs to haue it done, which euer since we haue dayly continued, and in consequence hereof, being charged by him to arme themselues agaynst the king of great Britaine, in companie of king Brandissant and his brethren, to ruinate and destroie all christendome together, wee entered on the seas with a goodly great armie thitherward, and sayling merrily certayne daies in our voiage, we were surprized with a greate tempest, which separated vs one from another, in such sort, as I know not what is become of the rest. Well wot I, that my ship was wrackte against a huge rocke, and none saued alive of all that were with me but my selfe alone.

Since

Since when, hauing recouered horse and armour, such as by fortune I brought with me into the forrest of great aduentures, wher meeting a proud and arrogant knight, that challenged all passengers to combate with him, promising for prize of their victorie a goodly horse, a fayre armour, and a golden cup of inestimable value: desirous to gain these thrée if I could, I entered the combat with him, and all daie wee fought together, without apparance of victorie on either side till the verie declining of the daie, when wee were euen on the point to knowe where the lot wouldé fall, when another knight no lesse valiant than proud, came to trouble our intent, very furiously assayling vs both. In which strange conflict it chanced that this curteous Lord came, and seeing our confused order of fighting, beheld howe I was wounded, of which hurts, through the mighty and supreame diuine vertue, I am now healed.

Thus good Father, haue I fully satisfied your request, if ye will command me anie other seruice, assure your selfe I will doe it verie gladly. Thus king Florent of Phez ended his discourse, when the olde hermite began an excellent exhortation to confirme him soundly in the christian fayth, charging him to liue and die in defence thereof, and not to persecute it as before he had done. Taking occasion by the example of Saint Paul, to incite him forward to his dutie, according as he procéeded in Gods seruice after hee was so diuinely called. When he had finished his sermon, wherwith the king was highly satisfied and contented, after hee hadde humbly thanked him for so great good receiued, he departed in companie of the faire pilgrime, with him to go visite the holy sepulchre of Iesus Christ: where what happened to them afterward, you shal reade at large in the third volume of this worthie historie, which (if God permit) you shal see verie shortly.

The

The discourse of the Giant Squamell.

Quamell the ouer weening proud knight, mightie in strength and of Giantine stature, was conducted on the blacke riuer (as yee haue heard) very farre vnder the earth, by the diabolicall arte of the Necromancer Charonifor, euen into a park chamber full of fyre and smoake, the verie next neighbout to black Auernos: wherein hee was no sooner arriued, but certaine young spirits or deuils, the waiting seruants on the sorcerer, came quickly about him, foure bringing vnguents, others clothes, another a candle of Rosen to light their maister, that he might make readie his necessarie emplaisters, wherewith the Giants wounds should be healed. And he being halfe dead, was laid along on a banke before a great fire, that burned extreamly within the chamber, which onely serued to giue them light night and day: three times he swonned, while Chironifer his chirurgion felt the depth of his mortall woundes, which notwithstanding, by his speedy helps, succour, and dilligence, within fewe dayes after were made verye whole and sound. Right well he knew how to thank the Necromancer, bowing his loue, for euer after to him: and Charonifer likewise as glad of his health, exhorted him still to follow his aduenture, and returns to the Forrest where hee was wounded, there to stay till he met a knight in black armour, mounted on the horse which was one of the prizes of the combate, assuring him, that hee was one of the best knights in the world. If therefore he aymed at honor and reputation, such as beseemed the diuer of knighthood, hee should not rest till he had fought with him and slaine him, otherwise if he failed in this doe behoue, his life would bee in verye great danger. Hereuppon Squamell listening, promised to performe his departing frō his nightly shade, after he had taken leaue

of the Necromancer: he was conducted back againe by the same way he went, entring the black Boate, to goe view the light of the sunne, which hee had neuer seene since hee came thither. Beeing in little while arriued in the forrest of high aduentures, and riding by the morning light, the space of an houre: he found a Ladie of meruailous beautie hanging by the neck on a Tree, the fatall instrument, being the laces that bound vp her hayre, which being dischaueled round about her, hung downe to her very feete. The Giant presently knew her to be the Lady Lucinda whom somtime he loued, and now so mortally hated, as hee was not a little ioyfull to behold this sight: lauding his gods, especially Cupid, who so meritoriouslie reuenged the rigour, which shee in former time had vsed toward him: for when he intirelie loued her, she scorned him, wherfore in iesting maner he imbraced the dead bodye, swinging her about from one side to another: but at last hee was ware of a paper, which with a small thread was fastened on her bosome, which hee taking downe, and seeing them to be verses, read them to himselfe in this manner.

The verses written on a little Labell, and fastned about the Ladyes neck, as shee hung vpon the Tree.

THou that goest by, if pittie thee possesse,
then take compassion on this noble dame:
Who foyld by loue, and fortunes forwardnes,
heere (as thou seest) hath doone a deed of shame.
Making her hands the engines of her death,
And on this Tree sent foorth her latest breath.

If thou be knight, and valour doost containe,
doo thy deuoire, to wreake her haplesse end:
On cruell *Squamell*, honors foulest staine,
whom teares nor treates could make a Ladies frend.
But full of rancor, pride and high disdaine:
Still made her breath her sighes & sutes in vaine.

If thou be Lady, or some vertuous dame;
and knowst the man that holds thy fauours deere:
Loue him againe, and thinke not on my name,
in whom the effects of scorne dooth well appeare.
I was beloou'd, and then I would not fauoure,
I sued for loue, and haue this for my labour.

As when he lou'd, I coyly made refuse,
so when I lou'd, he did disdaine my sight:
I would not yeeld when liked him to chuse,
he would not graunt when I would if I might.
Let this vile death for my contempt suffice:
And my example make all other wise.

When Squamell had read these lines, he was so ouercome with choller and despight, as letting fall the writing, he set hand to his Semitarie, wherewith hee smote at the Ladie, and cut her quite thorowe in the middest by her girdle: so that the one part of the bodie, to wit, the head, neck, shoulders and sides remained hanging on the tree, and the belly, flankes, thighes, legges and feete tombled on the ground, a thing very cruell, hideous, and gastly to be seene. Hauing in this sorte somewhat appeased his anger, hee did nothing but laugh, breathing forth many iniurious speeches against her: at which very instant, an other Giant of meruailous stature, exceeding Squamell in heighth by the head, arriued there, who hearing him speake such vile wordes, and seeing withall such an inhumaine deed: thought good to check and reproue him for it in this manner.

Knight, thou mayst well blush with shame, that any one should euer see thee beare marke of chiualrie, and the arms which thou dooste weare: imploying them so badly as thou hast doone, vpon a poore and miserable creature, whose vnhappie destenie brought her to this end. I thinke if thou wouldst shew thy selfe so vertuous and valiant, to so many braue knights, which ordinarily passe thorow this forrest,

as thou hast witnessed thy selfe most monstrous and cruell toward this poore body: thou shouldst finde other assayres better beseeming a knight then this, and wherein thou mightest with greater honestie spend thy time. Now nowe companion? answered Squamell, darest thou be so bolde as come hither to reprooue my actions, which are so vertuous and worthie, as heauen, earth, and all contained therein do admire them? especially this last deede by me doone vppon this Ladie, is so deseruedly to be praised, as if thou knewest the occasion thereof, thou wouldst commend and reckon me among other knights of vertue, that doo dayly make high esteame of mee, and that more worthilie, than thou canst dare thus rashlye to reprehend mee: but because I repute thée vnworthie to know this occasion, I haue nothing else to say vnto thée, but if with speed thou get thee not gon: I will learne thee against an other time to speake more wiselie, in that I haue the power both to tame and teache. And albeit thou art of bigger constitution then I, yet will I shew thée, that in all the rest thou art farre lesse and inferiour to me: and for I am loth to laye anye hand vpon thee, but onely the very greatnes of my name, which is sufficient to make thee flie quickly out of my presence, know that I am the great and puissant knight Squamell, the renowne of whose vertue enuirones all the worlde, and serues as a terror to the most audacious and hardiest knight.

Knight, replyed the Giant, I haue heard speeche of thee, and the bruite of thy name hath often heretofore pierced mine eares: yet (for all that) I am nothing hastie of flight, because I doo not imagine thée to be so hardie and valiant, as the thundering reporte that hath beene blazed of thee: for if thou hast heard report of the mightie Ferclaste, Androfort and Ergoferant, thou hast well vnderstood, that neuer might any knight doo equalled in force and prowesse with them; but the hardyest and stoutest indeed haue fled at the renowne of their names.

Their

Theyr fame while they liued was noised farre and néere, so likewise was the worthie Zaabot: then maist thou well thinke and assure thy selfe, that I who am Ergoferant, the onely suruiuer of those thrée, doo greatly scorne to flie from thée, except some greater matter enforce or constraine mee. What, answered Squamell, art thou one of those thrée huge Colosses, that serued as a terror to all Gréece? and of those thrée remaineth none aliue but thée? Tell mee what is become of thy brethren, for if they be dead, assure thy self I am greatly displeased, in respect of the earnest desire I hadde to combate with them, and conquere ye all thrée one after another, not for anie loue I dyd euer beare ye, or doubting anie hatred ye all durst beare me. Content thy selfe, sayd Ergoferant, that thou knowest ther were such thrée, thou must now enter the combate alone against me, I shall bee sufficient to breake thy foolish pate, and cause thée quickly giue ouer this proud daring spéech. To knowe what is become of my brethren, how they were slaine, and by whome, I am not to tell thée, because thou hast shewen so little curtesie to me, in scorning to tell me this. Ladies misfortune, and the occasion of thy hatred to her, urging thée to committe such a monstrous and inhumane act, in this respect I thinke thée vnworthie to knowe theyr mishaps. I perceiue wel (quoth Squamel) why thou darest not tell mee, because theyr ende was with such shame and reproch, as it were thy dishonour, being their brother, to make report therof, for perhaps, as it is no other like, some knight of smal valour hath slain them, and by conquest brought thée likewise vnder his obeisance. Thou liest in thy throate, answered Ergoferant, for a knight of slender valor could not conquere them, nor yet subiect me to his obedience, but if I yelded my selfe to anie one, assure thy selfe hee was no meane man of vertues. And that thou maist heare record thereof, we trifle too much time in prating, let the effects declare which of vs two prouesth most valiant, otherwise thou doest but séeke occasion to shunne the combat, which take as

thou wilt, for I will dally no longer. So saying, with a mightie mase which he bore, he let driue at his aduersarie, & the stroke fell with such violence, he standing with his semitarie drawen to defend it, as had hee not withstoode it with wonderfull strength, it had layde him on the grounde. But Squamell well awarded this horrible blow, without receiuing anie great domage therby, and deliuered back a sound answere for the same with his semitarie, which the gyaunt escaped in as ample manner: and thus began betwæn them a sharpe and cruell fight, continuing the space of two hours, without discouery which side had most aduantage, but in the end it so fell out, that Squamel was readier to fight on horsbacke than the other, knowing howe to tourne and manage his horse for most harme to his enemie, mary Ergoferant was nothing so nimble, only his strokes were more waightie than his aduersaries, but he was nothing comparable in dexterie and nimblenes, which is the onely thing required in a combat. At length Squamel began to be verie sore trauailed, when sodainely ariued in place a knight of so little stature, as he might easily stand vnder the cleft of eyther of them, he galloping with the full carrire of his horse, hauing a fayre broad glistering sword in his hand, which hee handled so lightly, as if it had bin a litle riding wād, yet was it in sight so beauie, as if he could not haue lifted it with both his hands. To each of the combattants hee gaue a mernaylous stroke, saying, holde and cease your fighting, to tell me forth the occasion of your combat. Ergoferant was astonned here at, as giuing his horse the bridle, without conduct or gouernment he ranne awaie, keeping no direct course, but here and there ouer the forrest, as in short space he was farre inough from his enemie. Squamel likewise was so amazed with his stroke, as albeit hee rained his horse as strongly as hee could, yet ran he away with him swifter than the wind, carrying him also as far off the other waie. Hereat they both merualled not a litle, especially the short knight, who seeing

them

them fight so fiercely, reputed them of greater valor than to flie awaie so spædily. But knowing as then no reason hereof, he fel into a great laughter, til sodainly he espied the ladie hanging, when hauing a prettie while beheld her, both the mangled trunke and the rest lying on the ground, perceiuing she had bene of singular beautie, he toke some compassion on her missfortune, especially after he had read the verses, which he found on the ground wher Squamel had throwen them: and so entirely was he moued with pitie, as hee resolued to know who had caused her mischap, to the end hee might worke some reuenge therefore. Hereupon he would ride to mæte one of the two combattants, by force or fayre meanes to know how this happened: now while he is searching them, not onely wil I here conclude this Chapter, but also the second booke of this famous Historie.

Thus Gentlemen, here knit we vp the second part of Gerileons historie, if this may find but wished entertainmēt, the third part shall follow with all speed possible. In meane while an old promise remaineth to be performed, namely, the first booke of Primaleon of Greece, which by Gods permission yee shal haue the next Tearme, if it may be finished so soone. Let then Gerileons welcome hasten on Primaleon.

FINIS. A. Munday.